Writing essays and dissertations can be a major concern for overseas students studying at English-medium colleges and universities. Virtually all courses contain a large degree of written assessment and it is essential to ensure that your writing skills meet the necessary standard. Academic Writing is a new kind of writing course for all international students who have to write exams or coursework in English. This practical book thoroughly explains the writing process and covers all the key writing skills.

Clearly organised into four parts, Academic Writing allows both teachers and students to quickly find the help they need with all writing tasks. Each part is split into short sections containing explanations, diagrams and practice exercises, for use in the classroom or self-study. Newly revised and updated, this second edition contains extra exercises and material – much of which has been suggested by teachers and students.

The text is complemented with cross-references and answers are provided to the exercises. Various writing models, such as CVs, letters and essays, are also included. Key features of the book are:

- Explains the writing process, from understanding the title to proof-reading
- Covers key writing skills such as referencing and paraphrasing
- Contains twenty-three units on accuracy in writing
- Adaptable for both long and short courses

Any international student wishing to maximise his or her academic potential will find this practical and easy-to-use guide to writing in English a truly indispensable resource.

Stephen Bailey has taught English for Academic Purposes at the University of Nottingham and the University of Derby for the past 10 years. Before that he taught English to students in the Czech Republic, Spain, Japan and Malaysia.
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part 1: THE WRITING PROCESS</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Student Introduction</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 Background to Writing</td>
<td>Writing Foundations 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Avoiding Plagiarism</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 From Titles to Outlines</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4 Evaluating Texts</td>
<td>Reading and Note-making 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 Understanding Purpose and Register</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6 Selecting Key Points</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7 Note-making</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8 Paraphrasing</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9 Summary Writing</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.10 Combining Sources</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.11 Planning Essays</td>
<td>Writing Stages 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.12 Organising Paragraphs</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.13 Organising the Main Body</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.14 Introductions</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.15 Conclusions</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.16 Rewriting and Proof-reading</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part 2: ELEMENTS OF WRITING</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Student Introduction</strong></td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1 Argument</td>
<td>This may be partly true, but. . . 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 Cause and Effect</td>
<td>Flooding results from heavy rain 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3 Cohesion</td>
<td>The former. . . , while the latter. . . 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4 Comparison</td>
<td>His work is more interesting than hers 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5 Definitions</td>
<td>An assignment is a task given to students 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6 Discussion</td>
<td>Benefits and drawbacks 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7 Examples</td>
<td>Many departments, for instance medicine, 86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.8 Generalisations</td>
<td>Computers are useful machines 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.9 Numbers</td>
<td>The figures in the report. . . 92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.10 Opening Paragraphs</td>
<td>In recent years the internet has. . . 96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.11 References and Quotations</td>
<td>As Donner (1997) pointed out. . . 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.12 Restatement and Repetition</td>
<td>In other words. . . 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.13 Style</td>
<td>Precise, semi-formal, impersonal and objective 105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.14 Synonyms</td>
<td>Interpretation/explanation 109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.15 Variation in Sentence Length</td>
<td>Long vs. short sentences 112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.16 Visual Information</td>
<td>Graphs, charts and tables 114</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Part 3: ACCURACY IN WRITING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3.1 Abbreviations</th>
<th>i.e./WTO/nimby</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.2 Academic Vocabulary</td>
<td>subjective/objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3 Adverbs</td>
<td>currently/eventually</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4 Articles</td>
<td>a/an/the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5 Caution</td>
<td>Poor education tends to lead to crime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6 Confusing Pairs</td>
<td>affect/effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7 Conjunctions</td>
<td>furthermore/however</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8 Nationality Language</td>
<td>Denmark/Danish/Danes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.9 Nouns and Adjectives</td>
<td>efficiency/efficient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.10 Nouns – Countable and Uncountable</td>
<td>business/businesses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.11 Nouns – Umbrella</td>
<td>field/concept/factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.12 Prefixes and Suffixes</td>
<td>undergraduate/graduation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.13 Prepositions</td>
<td>The purpose of this paper. . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.14 Punctuation</td>
<td>“?:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.15 Relative Pronouns</td>
<td>that/which/who</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.16 Singular or Plural?</td>
<td>the team is/are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.17 Time Words and Phrases</td>
<td>Since the nineteenth century. . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.18 Verbs – Formality</td>
<td>speed up/accelerate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.19 Verbs – Modal</td>
<td>may/could/should</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.20 Verbs – Passives</td>
<td>The gases were discovered. . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.21 Verbs and Prepositions</td>
<td>concentrate on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.22 Verbs of Reference</td>
<td>Martins (1975) claimed that. . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.23 Verbs – Tenses</td>
<td>Few scientists dispute/have disputed. . .</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Part 4: WRITING MODELS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4.1 Formal Letters</th>
<th>Letter layout and letters of application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4.2 CVs</td>
<td>Layout and phrasing of a curriculum vitae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3 Reporting and Designing Surveys</td>
<td>Questionnaire design and survey reports</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4 Taking Ideas from Sources</td>
<td>The note-making and paraphrasing process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5 Comparison Essay</td>
<td>A comparison of classroom learning with internet-based teaching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.6 Discussion Essay</td>
<td>Education is the most important factor in national development – Discuss</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Writing Tests | 201 |
| Answers | 204 |
| Sources | 259 |
Introduction

Academic Writing is for international students studying in colleges and universities where courses are taught in English. Those students who are not native speakers of English often find the written demands of their courses very challenging. In addition to learning academic English they need to adopt new conventions of style, referencing and layout.

Students usually have to complete a variety of writing tasks during their studies, ranging from short IELTS essays to lengthy dissertations. This writing may be done either under exam pressure or as coursework. In addition, the type of writing they are asked to do depends on the subject they are studying: future lawyers will be given quite different tasks from potential pharmacists.

Academic Writing recognises this variety of needs. It is a flexible course that allows students of all subjects and levels, from foundation to PhD, to practise those aspects of writing which are most important for their studies. The book is organised to provide maximum hands-on practice for students. They can work either with a teacher or by themselves, since the structure of the book has been made as simple as possible to allow them to find what they want quickly.

Academic Writing is divided into four parts. In Parts 1 and 2 the focus is on key writing skills, while Parts 3 and 4 offer revision and reference. Parts 2 and 3 are organised alphabetically for easy access.

Part 1: The Writing Process guides students from the initial stage of understanding the essay title, through note-making and paraphrasing, to the organisation of the essay and finally proof-reading.

Part 2: Elements of Writing deals with the skills that are needed for most types of assignment, such as making comparisons, giving examples and describing graphs.

Part 3: Accuracy in Writing gives remedial practice in those areas that students often find confusing, such as using articles, passives or prepositions.

Part 4: Writing Models offers examples of the types of writing that students commonly need, including letters and survey reports as well as essays.

There is also a Writing Tests section for checking progress.

The four parts are divided into sixty-one short units which teach practical writing skills and revise common difficulties. Each unit contains exercises, and a comprehensive answer key is given at the end. A system of cross-referencing helps students link related units together.
Although every effort has been made to make Academic Writing as clear and accurate as possible, I would welcome comment or criticism from either teachers or students.

Stephen Bailey
academicwriting@beeb.net

Instructions to students are printed like this:

*Complete sentences with suitable words from the box below.*

Cross-references in margins look like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cross-reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.11 References and Quotations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This means: refer to the unit on references and quotations in Part 2 (Unit 11)
Acknowledgements

I would like to thank the many staff and students at the Centre for English Language Education (CELE) at The University of Nottingham who have piloted these materials, and in particular my colleagues Ann Smith, Janet Sanders, John Rabone and Sandra Haywood for their help in unravelling some of the finer points of academic language.

My wife, Rene, deserves my warmest thanks for her unfailing support, advice and encouragement during the project’s development.

The authors and publishers wish to thank the following for permission to reproduce photographs and other copyright material in this book.

Corel 76 (NT) p. 39; Corel 102 (NT) p. 128; Corel 392 (NT) p. 159; Corel 631 (NT) p. 44; Corel 787 (NT) p. 54; Joe Cornish/Digital Vision LL (NT) p. 50; Illustrated London News V1 (NT) p. 74; Illustrated London News V2 (NT) p. 4; Photodisc 31 (NT) p. 108; Photodisc 41 (NT) p. 61; Photodisc 46 (NT) pp. 74, 111; Photodisc 71 (NT) p. 12; Photodisc 72 (NT) p. 24; Stockbyte 31 (NT) p. 79.

Every effort has been made to contact copyright holders and the publishers apologise to anyone whose rights have been inadvertently overlooked and will be happy to rectify any errors or omissions.

Teachers and lecturers using this book with a class will be able to find extra teaching material within the teacher resources section of the Routledge website at http://www.routledge.com/education.
Student Introduction

Most academic courses in English-medium colleges and universities use essays or other written tasks to assess students’ work. These can be done as coursework, when a deadline of one or two months may be given, or in exams, when an essay often has to be finished in an hour.

The process of writing essays for coursework can be shown as a flowchart:

Understand essay title/requirements
Assess reading texts – choose most suitable
Select relevant areas of texts – keep record for references
Make notes on relevant areas, using paraphrasing and summarising skills
Combine a variety of sources where necessary
Select suitable structure for essay – make plan
Organise and write main body
Organise and write introduction
Organise and write conclusion
Critically read and rewrite where necessary
Final proof-reading

Part 1, *The Writing Process*, examines each of these stages in turn. If students are concerned only with preparing for exam writing they could miss out the reading and note-making stages, but if they have enough time they should work through every unit, preferably in the order given, since each stage builds on the previous one.

Although it is essential to learn the basic writing process, at the same time it is useful to be aware of the elements that contribute to good academic writing. When writing an introduction, for example, it is helpful to know how to write a definition, and so students working on *Introductions* (unit 1.14) should use the cross-reference boxes to look at the unit on *Definitions* in unit 2.5.
1.1 Background to Writing

Most university and college students are assessed through the production of written assignments. Some of the terms used to describe different types of assignments can be confusing. In addition, students need to be clear about the basic components of written texts. This unit provides an introduction to these topics.

1. Below are the most common types of written work produced or used by students.

Complete the table to show the main purpose of each, and their usual approximate length.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
<th>Length</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>letter</td>
<td>for formal and informal</td>
<td>usually fewer than 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>communication</td>
<td>words</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>report</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>project</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essay</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thesis/dissertation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>article/paper</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Organisation of texts.

a) *Explain the following terms in italics:*

**Shorter texts**, e.g. essays, are normally organised:

Introduction > Main Body > Conclusion

**Longer texts**, e.g. dissertations and articles, may include (depending on subject area):

Abstract > Contents > Introduction > Main Body > Case Study > Discussion > Findings > Conclusion > Acknowledgements > Bibliography/References > Appendices

**Books** may also contain:

Dedication > Foreword > Preface > Index

b) *Match the definitions below to one of the terms in (2a).*

i) Short summary (100–200 words) of the writer’s purpose and findings

(......)

ii) Section where various people who assisted the writer are thanked

(......)
iii) Final part where extra data, too detailed for the main text, are stored (......)
iv) List of all the books that the writer has consulted (......)
v) Section looking at a particular example, relevant to the main topic (......)
vi) Introductory part of the book which may give the writer’s motives (......)
vii) Alphabetical list of all topics in the text (......)

3. Other text features

**Abbreviations** are often used to save space:

Call centres (CCs) feature prominently in the technology mix . . .

**Italics** are used to show titles and words from other languages:

Where once the titles of *Armchair Theatre* and *The Wednesday Play* celebrated . . .

Squatter housing (called *gecekondu* in Turkish) . . .

**Footnotes** are used to indicate references at the bottom of the page:

In respect of Singapore the consensus is that the government has made a difference.3

**Endnotes** are given to show references at the end of the article or chapter:

The market for masonry construction may be divided into housing and non-housing sectors [1].
1.1 Background to Writing

Quotation marks are used to draw attention to a phrase, perhaps because it is being used in an unusual or new way:

The research shows that the ‘pains of imprisonment’ for women are . . .

4. All types of writing consist of a number of key elements.

Label the italic items in the text.

a) ................. THE ORIGINS OF THE INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION

b) ................. Introduction

c) ................. It is generally agreed that the Industrial Revolution began in Britain during the eighteenth century, with significant developments in the iron, steel and textile industries. But it is less clear what caused this sudden increase in production in key areas; different writers have examined the availability of capital, the growth of urban populations and the political and religious climate. All of these may have played a part, but first it is necessary to consider the precise nature of what is meant by ‘industrial revolution’.

d) ................. All of these may have played a part, but first it is necessary to consider the precise nature of what is meant by ‘industrial revolution’.

e) ................. Industry had existed for thousands of years prior to the eighteenth century, but before this time society as a whole remained agricultural. With the arrival of the ironworks and cotton mills whole towns were dominated by industrial activity. At the same time, agriculture itself went through significant changes which produced more food for the growing urban population.

5. Why are all texts divided into paragraphs? How long are paragraphs?

Read the following text, from the introduction to an essay, and divide it into a suitable number of paragraphs.

INVESTMENT

Most people want to invest for the future, to cover unexpected financial difficulties and provide them with security. Different people, however, tend to have different requirements, so that a 25-year-old just leaving university would be investing for the long term, whereas a 60-year-old who had just retired would probably invest for income. Despite these differences, certain principles apply in most cases. The first issue to consider is
risk. In general, the greater the degree of risk in investment, the higher the return. Shares, for example, which can quickly rise or fall in value, typically have a higher yield than bonds, which offer good security but only pay about 5%. Therefore all investors must decide how much risk is appropriate in their particular situation. Diversification must also be considered in an investment strategy. Wise investors usually seek to spread their investments across a variety of geographical and business sectors. As accurate predictions of the future are almost impossible, it is best to have as many options as possible. A further consideration is investor involvement. Some investors opt for a high degree of involvement and want to buy and sell regularly, constantly watching the markets. Others want to invest and then forget about it. Personal involvement can be time-consuming and worrying, and many prefer to leave the management of their portfolios to professional fund managers.
1.2 Avoiding Plagiarism

All students have to face the issue of plagiarism. Plagiarism means taking information or ideas from another writer and using them in your own work, without acknowledging the source in an accepted manner. In academic work plagiarism can be a serious offence. This unit outlines the situation, but to fully avoid plagiarism students need to master the skills practised in units 1.6–1.10.

1. Which of the following would be considered as plagiarism?
   a) Not providing a reference when you have used somebody’s idea.

   b) Copying a few sentences from an article on the internet without giving a reference.

   c) Not giving a reference when you use commonly accepted ideas, e.g. Aids is a growing problem.

   d) Giving the reference but not using quotation marks when you take a sentence from another writer’s article.

   e) Taking a paragraph from a classmate’s essay without giving a reference.

   f) Presenting the results of your own research.

2. To avoid plagiarism, and also to save having lengthy quotations in your work, it is necessary to paraphrase and summarise the original. Instead of this, students sometimes hope that changing a few words of the original will avoid charges of plagiarism. Clearly, you are not expected to alter every word of the original text, but your summary must be substantially different from the original.

   Read the following extract on twentieth-century educational developments from Age of Extremes by E. Hobsbawm:

   Almost as dramatic as the decline and fall of the peasantry, and much more universal, was the rise of the occupations which required secondary and higher education. Universal primary education, i.e. basic literacy, was indeed the aspiration of virtually all governments, so much so that by the late 1980s only the most honest or helpless states admitted to having as many as half their population illiterate, and only ten – all but Afghanistan in Africa – were prepared to concede that less than 20% of their population could read or write. (Hobsbawm, 1994, p. 295)

   Which of the following are plagiarised and which are acceptable?

   a) Almost as dramatic as the decline and fall of the peasantry, and much more general, was the rise of the professions which required secondary and higher education. Primary education for all, i.e. basic literacy,
was indeed the aspiration of almost all governments, so much so that by the late 1980s only the most honest countries confessed to having as many as half their population illiterate, and only ten – all but Afghanistan in Africa – were prepared to admit that less than 20% of their population could read or write. (Hobsbawm, 1994, p. 295)

b) Nearly as dramatic as the decline of the peasantry was the rise of professions which required secondary and higher education. Primary education for everyone (basic literacy) was the aspiration of nearly all governments, so that by the late 1980s only the very honest countries confessed to having as many as half their population illiterate. Only ten (African) countries conceded that less than 20% of their population were literate. (Hobsbawm, 1994, p. 295)

c) As Hobsbawm (1994) argues, there was a marked increase in jobs needing secondary or higher education during the twentieth century. All but a few nations claimed that the majority of their people were literate. Universal primary education i.e. basic literacy was indeed the aspiration of virtually all governments. (p. 295)

d) There was a sharp and widespread increase in occupations requiring education above primary level. All governments set out to provide basic education, essentially literacy, for their people. By the end of the 1980s very few states would admit that the majority of their population were unable to read. (Hobsbawm, 1994, p. 295)

3. **What makes the difference between plagiarised and acceptable work? List your ideas below.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acceptable</th>
<th>Plagiariised</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Some vocabulary kept from original</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Most written work begins with a title, and students must be quite clear what question the title is asking before starting to plan the essay and read around the topic. This unit deals with analysing titles and making basic essay outlines.

1. When preparing to write an essay, it is essential to identify the main requirements of the title. You must be clear about what areas your teacher wants you to cover. These will then determine the organisation of the essay. For example:

   The state should play no part in the organisation of industry – discuss.

   Here the key word is *discuss*. Discussing involves examining the benefits and drawbacks of something.

Underline the key words in the following titles and consider what they are asking you to do.

   a) Define information technology (IT) and outline its main applications in medicine.

   b) Compare and contrast the appeal process in the legal systems of Britain and the USA.

   c) Evaluate the effect of mergers in the motor industry in the last ten years.

   d) Trace the development of primary education in one country. Illustrate some of the issues currently facing this sector.

   Note that most of the titles above have *two* terms in the title. You must decide how much importance to give to each section of the essay: e.g. title (a) might require 10% for the definition and 90% for the explanation.

2. The following terms are also commonly used in essay titles.

   Match the terms to the definitions on the right.

   Analyse - Give a clear and simple account
   Describe - Make a proposal and support it
   Examine - Deal with a complex subject by giving the main points
   State - Divide into sections and discuss each critically
   Suggest - Give a detailed account
   Summarise - Look at the various parts and their relationships
3. Almost all essays, reports and articles have the same basic pattern of organisation:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Introduction** | various economic theories: Marxist, Keynesian, free market  
most economies display trend towards privatisation |
| **Disadvantages** | state protects workers from exploitation, e.g. children  
consumers protected from dangerous products, e.g. medical drugs  
state has resources to support new technologies |
| **Advantages** | few state-controlled economies are successful, e.g. Soviet Union  
state control does not encourage individual effort  
state intervention often leads to corruption |
| **Conclusion** | state has a role in protecting weakest, but should not interfere with free enterprise |

The structure of the main body depends on what the title is asking you to do. In the case of a `discuss` type essay, the main body is often divided into two parts, one looking at the advantages of the topic and the other looking at the disadvantages.

An outline for the example in (1) might look like this:

The state should play no part in the organisation of industry – discuss.

Introduction

various economic theories: Marxist, Keynesian, free market
most economies display trend towards privatisation

Disadvantages

state protects workers from exploitation, e.g. children
consumers protected from dangerous products, e.g. medical drugs
state has resources to support new technologies

Advantages

few state-controlled economies are successful, e.g. Soviet Union
state control does not encourage individual effort
state intervention often leads to corruption

Conclusion

state has a role in protecting weakest, but should not interfere with free enterprise

4. Write an outline for one of the other titles in (1).
5. Teachers often complain that students write essays which do not answer the question set.

Consider the following titles and decide which sections should be included in each essay.

a) Describe the growth of the European Union since 1975 and suggest its likely form by 2020.

- A short account of European history 1900–2000
- An analysis of candidates for membership before 2020
- A discussion of the current economic situation in Europe
- A summary of the enlargement of the EU from 1975 to now

b) Summarise the arguments in favour of privatisation and evaluate its record in Britain.

- A case study of electricity privatisation
- An analysis of the international trends in privatisation
- A study of major privatisations in the UK
- A discussion of the benefits achieved by privatisation

c) To what extent is tuberculosis (TB) a disease of poverty?

- A definition of TB
- A report on the spread of TB worldwide
- A case study showing how TB relates to social class
- A discussion of new methods of treating the disease

d) Nursery education is better for children than staying at home with mother – discuss.
A study of the growth of nurseries in the UK since 1995

A report on the development of children who remain at home until age 5

A discussion comparing speaking ability in both groups of children

An analysis of the increase of women in the labour market since 1960

e) Compare studying in a library with using the internet. Will the former become redundant?

The benefits of using books

The drawbacks of internet sources

Predicted IT developments in the next 15 years

The developments in library services since 1970

6. Underline the key terms in the following titles, and decide what you are being asked to do.

Example:

Relate the development of railways to the rise of nineteenth-century European nationalism.

Relate means to link one thing to another. The title is asking for links to be made between the growth of railways in Europe in the nineteenth century and the political philosophy of nationalism. The writer must decide if there was a connection or not.

a) Identify the main causes of rural poverty in China.

b) Calculate the likely change in coffee consumption that would result from a 10% fall in the price of coffee beans.

c) Classify the desert regions of Asia and suggest possible approaches to halting their spread.
Having understood the title and made an outline, the next step is probably to read around the subject. Although a reading list may be given, it is still vital to be able to assess the usefulness of journal articles and books. Time spent learning these skills will be repaid by avoiding the use of unreliable or irrelevant materials.

1. When reading a text, it is important to ask yourself questions about the value of the text. Is this text fact or opinion? If fact, is it true? If opinion, do I agree? Can this writer be trusted? These questions can be seen as a process:

```
Fact or opinion? → Fact or opinion? → Opinion
Fact: True or false? → False: ? → Disagree
True: Trustworthy and useful → Agree
```

2. Read the following sentences and decide first if they are fact or opinion. Then decide if you agree with the opinions, and if the factual sentences are true.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Opinion or fact?</th>
<th>Agree or disagree?</th>
<th>True or false?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The USA has the biggest economy in the world</td>
<td>Fact</td>
<td></td>
<td>True</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a) Shakespeare was a great writer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b) Shakespeare wrote textbooks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c) Smoking can be dangerous</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d) Too many people smoke in Britain</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e) 95% of criminals cannot read</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f) Poor education causes half of all crime</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. It can be seen that even short sentences, such as (2f) above, can contain a mixture of fact and opinion. Most longer texts, of course, consist of both.

Read the following text about crime in Britain and underline facts (_______) and opinions ( . . . . . . . . . .).

a) Britain has one of the highest crime rates in the world.

b) A robbery takes place every five seconds. Clearly, criminals are not afraid of the police.

c) Even if they are caught, few criminals ever appear in court.

d) Most of those who are found guilty are let off with a small fine.

e) To reduce crime, we need more police and tougher punishments.

4. The text can be evaluated as follows:

a) Fact, but only partly true. Britain does not have one of the highest overall crime rates in the world. For some crimes, e.g. car crime, the rate is high, but other countries, e.g. South Africa, have much higher rates of violent crime.

b) This may or may not be true, but it does not follow that criminals are unafraid of the police.

c) Fact, but not true. A significant number of those arrested are charged and later prosecuted.

d) This fact is distorted. A fine is not ‘letting off’. What is meant by ‘small’?

e) This is opinion. More police would probably help reduce crime, but it is not clear if more severe punishments would have that result.

From this it can be seen that, even if the facts are correct, the opinions that are expressed may not be reliable. The evaluation above would suggest that the writer of the original text could not be trusted, and it would be better to look for another source.
5. Evaluate the following texts in a similar way, using the table below. First underline and assess the facts and opinions, then decide if the text as a whole is trustworthy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text</th>
<th>Are the facts true?</th>
<th>Do I agree with the opinions?</th>
<th>Trustworthy?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a) Every year large numbers of students travel abroad to study at university. Most of them spend thousands of pounds on their degree courses. The cost of travel and accommodation adds significantly to their expenses. But they could save a lot of money by studying their courses on-line, using the internet and email. Increasing numbers of universities are offering tuition by the internet, and this has many advantages for students. In the future most students are likely to stay at home and study in front of a computer.

b) London is an ideal city for young students. Britain’s lively capital, with a population of two million, is the perfect place to live and study. Cheap, comfortable accommodation is always available, and transport is provided by the clean and reliable underground railway system. Another advantage is the friendly citizens, who are well-known for their custom of stopping to chat with strangers. Overall, London is probably the best place in the world to study English.
c) Global warming affects most people in the world, especially those living in low-lying areas near the sea. It has been predicted that the melting of polar ice may cause the sea to rise by as much as twelve metres by 2050. This would cause flooding in many major coastal cities, such as Tokyo. It has been suggested that the best solution to this problem may be for mankind to become amphibious, like frogs. It is argued that life was originally found in the sea, and so it would merely be a return to our original habitat.

d) There is significant new evidence of the effects of heavy alcohol consumption by young people. In Britain in 2000 nearly 800 people under 44 died from cirrhosis of the liver, a condition which is mainly caused by excess drinking. This is over four times higher than the number in 1970. The growing problem seems to be due to ‘binge’ drinking among the young, when drinkers deliberately set out to get drunk. As a result, the government is studying the possibility of compulsory health warnings on alcohol advertising.
1.5 Understanding Purpose and Register

Having decided that a text is reliable, a student must read and understand as much as necessary for the needs of the essay. Understanding a text is not just a matter of vocabulary; the reader needs to find out the writer’s intentions. Is the writer aiming to inform, persuade, describe or entertain? In addition the reader should be clear about the type of English the writer is using: how formal is the tone? The answer to these questions may affect the way a student uses the material.

PURPOSE

1. Compare the two extracts below:
   a) Rebus College is seeking candidates for the position of Treasurer. As the Chief Financial Officer of the College, the Treasurer is responsible for working with the senior administration and Trustees to develop and implement a financial strategic vision for the College.
   b) Are you wondering what to do with that jumper you were given for Christmas that’s two sizes too small – or, worse, the personal stereo that simply doesn’t work? Well, don’t worry. Chances are, you’ll be able to get your dud gifts swapped, fixed or get a refund. And, armed with our guide to your rights, you’ll be able to get any defective products sorted.

The first extract is written to inform the reader about a job vacancy and to give information about the work. The second aims to persuade the reader to buy the guide described. The language style, or register, of the extracts is also very different. The first uses very formal vocabulary such as seeking, position and implement. The second uses an informal tone, the pronoun you, the question form and informal vocabulary such as dud and swapped.

2. Read the following extracts and complete the table using one or two of the following: inform/amuse/persuade/entertain.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   a) The lower you are in the office hierarchy, the more disgusting your sandwiches. You can safely assume
that a chicken and banana man is not a main board director. Some people, generally those in accounts, have had the same sandwich for the past 30 years. People like to prove how busy they are by eating their sandwich at their desk. But this is counter-productive, because every time you take a mouthful the phone rings, and you’ll only get to finish that last mouthful just before you go home.

b) Writing for publication can be both profitable and enjoyable. It’s open to everyone, because you don’t need any qualifications. In Britain there is a huge demand for new materials, with thousands of newspapers and magazines published every week. In addition there are TV and radio programmes, the theatre and films. Given this situation, there are many openings for new writers. But the director of one of the UK’s main writing colleges, the Writing Academy, advises: ‘to enter this market successfully you must have good training’.

c) The Advertising Standards Authority makes sure that advertising is legal, decent, honest and truthful. The Authority safeguards the public by ensuring that the rules contained in the British Code of Advertising Practice are followed by everyone who prepares and publishes advertisements in the UK, and that advice is freely available to prevent problems arising. The Code lays down what is and is not acceptable in advertisements, except for those on TV and radio.

---

**REGISTER**

3. **What are the differences between the following types of English? Where might each one be found?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Academic</td>
<td>Demographic data are given in Table 1. Twenty-three men and thirty-two women were available for follow-up examination. The sex and age distributions were approximately the same as in the total original baseline group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archaic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jargon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Journalistic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Literary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. **Match the examples below with the types of English listed above:**

a) Demographic data are given in Table 1. Twenty-three men and thirty-two women were available for follow-up examination. The sex and age distributions were approximately the same as in the total original baseline group.
b) The services, information or data (collectively, “information”) made available at the company web site are provided “as is”, without warranties of any kind. The Company expressly disclaims any representations and warranties, including without limitation, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for particular purpose.

c) The Creative Labs Inspire 6.1 6600 speaker set matches up well with the Sound Blaster Audigy 2 sound card, which has support for 24 bit processing and surround sound. The speaker set consists of five satellites, a centre speaker and a subwoofer.

d) Alexandria Main Station: midnight. A deathly heavy dew. The noise of wheels cracking the slime-slithering pavements. Yellow pools of phosphorous light, and corridors of darkness like tears in the dull brick façade of a stage set. Policemen in the shadows.

e) Nottingham, notwithstanding the navigation of the Trent, is not esteemed a town of very great trade, other than is usual to inland towns; the chief manufacture carried on here is frame-work knitting for stockings, the same as at Leicester, and some glass, and earthen ware-houses; the latter much increased since the increase of tea-drinking . . .

f) When Mary Graham went into hospital to have a new knee, she discovered a computer would be playing a big part in the operation. In the past, surgeons have relied on the naked eye to ensure they've got a replacement joint in the right position. But now they will be able to achieve almost total accuracy using a computer to guide them through the operation.

5. The following terms are used to describe special features in written English.

Match them with the examples (in italics) below.

Idiom* Euphemism*
Metaphor Proverb*
Paradox Hyperbole*
Analogy Irony*

a) The king passed away on August 3rd 1879.
b) She claimed that further research was the key to solving the problem.
c) As the Chinese say, the longest journey begins with a single step.
d) She felt that the older she got, the less she really knew.

e) The negotiation process reminded him of a game of chess.

f) By the end of the semester most students were in the red.

g) When a student arrived late, the teacher asked if he had had a good sleep.

h) He claimed that his book was the most important work of the century.

6. When writing academic work, it is important not to use phrases met in non-academic texts, e.g. newspapers or magazines. The features marked with an asterisk (*) above should be avoided in academic writing.

Find examples of them in the sentences below and rewrite them in more academic style.

a) Obesity is the most serious problem facing civilisation today.

b) One cause is the famously healthy Western diet of chocolate and hamburgers.

c) So people with podgy tummies should think about fighting the flab.

d) They should pull themselves together, and get down to the gym.

e) They must remember the saying: God helps those who help themselves.
1.6 Selecting Key Points

After selecting and understanding the most relevant texts, the next step is usually to make notes on the sections of the texts that relate to your topic. Units 1.6–1.9 practise this process, which involves a number of inter-linked skills. This unit deals with the identification of relevant information and ideas.

1. The first stage of note-making is to identify the key points in the text for your purpose. You are preparing to write an essay on ‘Changing patterns of longevity’.

Study the following example (key points in italics).

WHY WOMEN LIVE LONGER

Despite the overall increase in life expectancy in Britain over the past century, women still live significantly longer than men. In fact, in 1900 men could expect to live to 49 and women to 52, a difference of three years, while now the figures are 74 and 79, which shows that the gap has increased to five years.

Various reasons have been suggested for this situation, such as the possibility that men may die earlier because they take more risks. But a team of British scientists have recently found a likely answer in the immune system, which protects the body from diseases. The thymus is the organ which produces the T cells which actually combat illnesses. Although both sexes suffer from deterioration of the thymus as they age, women appear to have more T cells in their bodies than men of the same age. It is this, the scientists believe, that gives women better protection from potentially fatal diseases such as influenza and pneumonia.

Having selected these sections of the text, you can then go on to make notes from them:

| British women live longer than men: 79/74 years |
| reasons? new research suggests immune system/thymus > T cells |
| women have more T cells than men = better protection |

2. Read the following and then choose a suitable title which expresses the key point.

Title:

Dean Kamen is a 50-year-old American eccentric who is also a multi-millionaire. He always wears blue denim shirts and jeans, even when visiting his friend, the president, in the White House. He flies to work by helicopter, which
he also uses for visiting his private island off the coast of Connecticut. As an undergraduate Kamen developed the first pump that would give regular doses of medicine to patients. The patent for this and other original medical inventions has produced a huge income, allowing him to run his own research company which, among many other projects, has produced the iBot, the world’s first wheelchair which can climb stairs.

3. **Underline three key points in the following text.**

**EMPOWERING HEALTHCARE**

In many parts of the world hospitals have none of the modern health equipment that is common in western countries. This is partly because it is expensive, but also because electricity supplies are often unreliable, while trained staff who can read the complex displays may not be available. Now, Freeplay Energy, the company which developed the wind-up radio, is planning to introduce a range of medical equipment which can be used in those areas. All the machines will be of simple, robust design which will either use solar power or foot pedals, making expensive battery replacement unnecessary. Prototypes are currently on trial in South African hospitals, where their performance can be compared with more sophisticated machines.

4. **Underline the key points in the following text.**

**THE SIXTH WAVE?**

Lord May, the president of the Royal Society, has claimed that the world is facing a wave of extinctions similar to the five mass extinctions of past ages. He calculates that the current rate of extinction is between 100 and 1,000 times faster than the historical average. The cause of previous extinctions, such as the one which killed the dinosaurs, is uncertain, but was probably an external event such as collision with a comet.

However, the present situation is caused by human consumption of plants, which has resulted in a steady increase in agriculture and a consequent reduction in habitat for animals. Although many people are still hungry, food production has increased by 100% since 1965.

Lord May also pointed out that it was very difficult to make accurate estimates as nobody knew how many species of animals lived on the planet. So far 1.5 million species had been named, but the true figure might be as high as 100 million. Our ignorance of this made it almost impossible to work out the actual rate of extinction. However, the use of intelligent guesses suggests that losses over the past
century were comparable with the extinctions of earlier periods, evidence of which is found in the fossil record.

5. When preparing to write an essay you may be concerned with only one aspect of a text, so that your key points relate only to the topic you are examining.

a) You are planning to write an essay on ‘Marketing – art or science?’ Read the text below and underline the sections relevant to your essay.

BOTTLED WATER UNDER ATTACK

The Water Companies Association (WCA) has claimed that bottled water costs 700 times more than tap water, but is often of inferior quality. The chief executive of the WCA pointed out that although bottled water advertising often associated the product with sport and health there was no truth in this link. The reality, she said, was that the packaging of bottled water was environmentally damaging, since millions of empty bottles had to be disposed of in rubbish tips. 2% of samples of bottled water failed a purity test conducted by the Drinking Water Inspectorate, while only 0.3% of tap water samples failed the same test. Labels on bottled water often referred to ‘spring’ and ‘natural water’, which were meaningless phrases. In addition, bottled water was imported from as far as Korea and Kenya, which was a waste of resources. These criticisms, however, were rejected by the British Soft Drinks Association, which argued that bottled water was a successful business founded on giving the customers choice, quality and convenience.

b) You are preparing an essay on ‘The application of DNA research to the development of vaccines’. Read the text and underline the relevant sections.

NEW LIGHT ON THE PLAGUE

The plague, which first struck Europe in the sixth century, was one of the great disasters of history. In the fourteenth century it became the Black Death, when it may have killed one-third of the entire population. The microbe that causes the disease lives on rats, and is passed on to humans by the bite of a flea. It still survives today, though outbreaks are less deadly: the World Health Organization receives reports of 3,000 cases annually. Scientists believe that the microbe was originally a stomach infection, but evolved into a more lethal disease about 1,500 years ago.

Now the genetic code of the plague bacterium has been ‘read’ by scientists; a total of 465 million ‘letters’ of DNA. They believe that this will help in the development of
vaccines for the plague, one of which has begun clinical trials. In parts of Africa drug-resistant strains of the disease have evolved, which gives added importance to the work, as does the threat that the plague might be used as an agent of bacteriological warfare.
1.7 Note-making

Effective note-making is a key writing skill, with a number of practical uses. Good note-making techniques lead to accurate essays. Although you are the only person who will read your notes, clarity and organisation are important to save time and errors at the writing stage.

1. What are the main reasons for note-taking?
   Add to the ideas below.
   a) to avoid plagiarism
   b) 
   c) 
   d) 

2. Effective note-making is part of a sequence.
   What comes before and after?

3. You are writing an essay on ‘Computer security’. You find the following extract from an article in a magazine called Computing Tomorrow, volume 15 (2005), on pages 134–7. The author is Y. Lee. Read the text and complete the notes.

PICTURE PASSWORDS?

In computing, passwords are commonly used to limit access to official users. Yet the widespread use of passwords has serious drawbacks. Office workers now have to remember an average of twelve system passwords. In theory they should use different passwords for each site, but in reality these would be impossible to remember, so many people use the same password for all. An additional problem is that the majority use simple words such as hello, or names of family members, instead of more secure combinations of numbers and letters, such as 6ANV76Y. This permits computer hackers to download dictionaries, which will quickly find the word and allow them access.

When system users forget their passwords there is extra expense in supplying new ones, while if people are forced to change passwords frequently they often write them down, making systems even less secure. Therefore, it is clear that the idea of passwords, which have been used as security devices for thousands of years, may need rethinking.
One possible alternative has been developed by the American firm Real User, and is called Passfaces. In order to access the system a worker has to select a series of photographs of faces from a randomly generated sequence. If the pictures are selected in the correct order access is granted. This concept depends on the human ability to recognise and remember a huge number of different faces, and the advantage is that such a sequence cannot be told to anyone or written down, so is more secure. It is claimed that the picture sequence, which uses photographs of university students, is easier to remember than passwords, and it has now been adopted for the United States Senate.


Computer passwords
– generally used to protect sites from hackers

Drawbacks
a) office workers must remember av. 12 passwords → most use same one
b) 
c) 
d) 

4. Effective note-making

employs
• Headings, sub-headings, underlining and listing to organise the data clearly
• Simplified grammar (few articles, pronouns or prepositions)
• Symbols (such as = or +) and abbreviations (pp. or av.)

NB
a) Do not abbreviate too much, or you may find the notes impossible to understand in the future.
b) Sources should be noted in the same format as they will appear in your references.

c) You need to develop your own style for note-making, to suit the nature of your subject.

5. You have been told to write an essay on ‘Malaria – can it be controlled?’ You decide to make notes on the following article from a magazine called Medical Report (Volume 34 1998, pp. 78–86). The author’s name is Irene Nemecova. Make notes on the whole text in the box below.

MALARIA FIGHTS BACK

Drug-resistant strains of malaria, already one of the world’s major killers, are steadily spreading across the globe. The deadly strains have established themselves in South-East Asia and South America, and have recently begun to spread across India and Africa. Formerly under control in many areas, the disease now threatens two billion people living in more than 100 countries. Estimates suggest that there are now more than 350 million cases of malaria a year – a total four times the level of the early 1970s. In Africa alone the disease kills one million children each year.

Several factors are responsible for this disturbing development. Spreading world poverty has deprived nations of funds for sanitation, so that many health projects have been stopped, while increased movements of migrant workers and tourists have carried infections more rapidly from one country to another. At the same time, the overuse of drugs, especially antibiotics, has led to the establishment of resistant strains of diseases.

As well as this, hopes that genetic engineers might soon develop the world’s first malaria vaccine, a long-sought goal, have been questioned recently by several scientists. ‘There are so many strains of malaria parasite,’ said one scientist, ‘and each is able to alter its chemical surface and trick its way past the body’s defences. We’d need a remarkable vaccine to cope with that. However, a malaria vaccine is now undergoing human trials and may be available for use if proved successful.’

One of the greatest explosions in modern history occurred in 1815, when an Indonesian volcano called Mt. Tambora blew up. The eruption involved about 100 cubic kilometres of material being blown into the sky, with huge loss of life both on land and sea. Large quantities of volcanic dust were ejected into the atmosphere, and this dust gradually spread around the world, causing alarming events on the other side of the world.

In New England in north-eastern USA farmers were hit by bitterly cold weather in June and July 1816. Much of the harvest was lost due to repeated waves of frost and snow in the middle of summer. The same pattern was recorded in Europe, where agriculture was still suffering the effects of the Napoleonic Wars. In France wheat prices reached their highest point of the century in 1817.

As European demand for food rose, prices doubled in America. Although some profited from the shortages, others were driven to emigrate into the unexplored lands to the west. Numbers leaving Vermont, for example, increased by 100% between 1816 and 1817.
Paraphrasing involves changing a text so that it is quite different from the source, while retaining the meaning. This skill is important in several areas of academic work, but this unit focuses on using paraphrasing in note-making and summary writing. Effective paraphrasing is vital in academic writing to avoid the risk of plagiarism.

1. Although paraphrasing techniques are used in summary writing, paraphrasing does not aim to shorten the length of a text, merely to restate it.

   For example:
   
   Evidence of a lost civilisation has been found off the coast of China
   
   could be paraphrased:
   
   Remains of an ancient society have been discovered in the sea near China

2. A good paraphrase is significantly different from the wording of the original, without altering the meaning at all.

   Read the text below and then decide which is the better paraphrase, (a) or (b).

   Ancient Egypt collapsed in about 2180 BC. Studies conducted of the mud from the River Nile showed that at this time the mountainous regions which feed the Nile suffered from a prolonged drought. This would have had a devastating effect on the ability of Egyptian society to feed itself.

   a) The sudden ending of Egyptian civilisation over 4,000 years ago was probably caused by changes in the weather in the region to the south. Without the regular river flooding there would not have been enough food.

   b) Research into deposits of the Egyptian Nile indicate that a long dry period in the mountains at the river’s source may have led to a lack of water for irrigation around 2180 BC, which was when the collapse of Egyptian society began.

3. Techniques

   a) Changing vocabulary:

   studies > research
   society > civilisation
   mud > deposits

   NB Not all words and phrases can be paraphrased. For example, economics, socialism or global warming have no effective synonyms.
b) Changing word class:
   Egypt (n.) > Egyptian (adj.) mountainous regions (adj. + n.) > in the mountains (n.)

c) Changing word order:
   Ancient Egypt collapsed > the collapse of Egyptian society began

4. **Find synonyms for the words in italics.**
   
a) The *growth* of the car industry *parallels* the *development* of modern capitalism.

   Example: The *rise* of the *automobile* industry *matches* the *progress* of contemporary capitalism.

b) It *began* in France and Germany, but *took off* in the United States.

c) There Henry Ford *adapted* the moving *production* line from the Chicago meat industry to motor manufacturing, *thus* inventing mass production.

5. **Change the word class of the words in italics, and then rewrite the sentences.**
   
a) In the 1920s Alfred Sloan’s *management* theories *helped* General Motors to become the world’s *dominant* car company.

   Example: In the 1920s, with *help* from the *managerial* theories of Alfred Sloan, General Motors *dominated* the world’s car companies.

b) After the Second World War the industry *developed* ‘planned obsolescence’, whereby *frequent* model changes encouraged customers to buy new cars more often than they needed to.

c) Later, from the 1970s, *environmentalists* began to *criticise* the industry for *producing* inefficient models which used too much fuel, contributing to global warming.

6. **Change the word order of the following sentences (other changes may be needed).**
   
a) At this time, trades unions became increasingly militant in defence of their members’ jobs.

   Example: At this time increasingly militant trades unions defended their members’ jobs.
b) Today the industry owns some of the strongest brands in the world.

c) However, many major car companies struggle with stagnant markets and falling profits.

7. **Combine all these techniques to paraphrase the paragraph as fully as possible.**

FOUR WHEELS GOOD

The growth of the car industry parallels the development of modern capitalism. It began in France and Germany, but took off in the United States. There Henry Ford adapted the moving production line from the Chicago meat industry to motor manufacturing, thus inventing mass production. In the 1920s Alfred Sloan’s management theories helped General Motors to become the world’s dominant car company. After the Second World War the industry developed ‘planned obsolescence’, whereby frequent model changes encouraged customers to buy new cars more often than they needed to. Later, from the 1970s, environmentalists began to criticise the industry for producing inefficient models which used too much fuel, contributing to global warming. At this time, trades unions became increasingly militant in defence of their members’ jobs. Today the industry owns some of the strongest brands in the world. However, many major car companies struggle with stagnant markets and falling profits.

8. **Use the same techniques to paraphrase the following text.**

Before the last century no humans had visited Antarctica, and even today the vast continent has a winter population of fewer than 200 people. However, a recent report from a New Zealand government agency outlines the scale of the pollution problem in the ice and snow. Although untouched compared with other regions in the world, the bitter cold of Antarctica means that the normal process of decay is prevented. As a result some research stations are surrounded by the rubbish of nearly 60 years’ operations.

Despite popular belief, the polar continent is really a desert, with less precipitation than the Sahara. In the past, snowfall slowly covered the waste left behind, like beer cans or dead ponies, but now, possibly due to global warming, the ice is thinning and these are being exposed. Over 10 years ago the countries using Antarctica agreed a treaty on waste disposal, under which everything is to be taken home, and this is slowly improving the situation. However, the scientists do not want everything removed. The remains of very early expeditions at the beginning of the twentieth century have acquired historical value and will be preserved.
1.9 Summary Writing

Making summaries is a common activity in everyday life. If a friend asks you about a book you are reading, you do not tell her about everything in the book. Instead, you make a summary of the most interesting and important aspects. The same principle applies to summarising in academic work.

1. Choose three of the topics below and write summaries in no more than twelve words each.

Example:

Birmingham – Birmingham is a large industrial city in the English west midlands.

a) Your home town
b) Bill Gates
c) Your academic subject
d) The last book you read
e) A film you saw recently

Look at the summaries you have written above. What are the features of a successful summary?

2. Summary writing is an important skill in academic work. Different kinds of summaries are needed in different situations.

List as many study uses for summary writing as you can think of:

making notes from lectures

..........................................

..........................................

3. In essay writing students often have to summarise part of a book or journal article.

The summary may be just one or two sentences, to explain the main idea of the article, and perhaps compare it with another summarised text, or it might be necessary to include much more detail. In other words, a summary can range from 1–2% of the original to more than 50%: summarising is a flexible tool.

At first students need to follow a series of steps to summarise successfully. With practice the number of steps may be reduced, as the process becomes more automatic.

Complete the list of stages in a successful summary by using phrases from the box.
a) Read the text carefully and check key vocabulary.

b) Underline or highlight the ...............

c) Make notes of these, taking care to ...............

d) Write the summary using the notes, re-organising the ...............

e) Check the summary to make sure no ...............

4. Read the following text and compare the summaries. Decide which is best, giving reasons.

Researchers in France and the United States have recently reported that baboons are able to think abstractly. It has been known for some time that chimpanzees are capable of abstract thought, but baboons are a more distant relation to mankind. In the experiment, scientists trained two baboons to use a personal computer and a joystick. The animals had to match computer designs which were basically the same, but had superficial differences. In the experiment the baboons performed better than would be expected by chance. The researchers describe their study in an article in the *Journal of Experimental Psychology*.

a) French and American scientists have shown for the first time that baboons have the ability to think in an abstract way. The animals were taught to use a computer, and then had to select patterns that were similar, which they did at a rate better than chance.

b) Baboons are a kind of monkey more distant from man than chimpanzees. Although it is known that chimpanzees are able to think abstractly, until recently it was not clear if baboons could do the same. But new research by various scientists has shown that this is so.

c) According to a recent article in the *Journal of Experimental Psychology*, baboons are able to think in an abstract way. The article describes how researchers trained two baboons to use a personal computer and a joystick. The animals did better than would be expected.
Indian researchers are trying to find out if there is any truth in old sayings which claim to predict the weather. In Gujarat farmers have the choice of planting either peanuts, which are more profitable in wet years, or castor, which does better in drier conditions. The difference depends on the timing of the monsoon rains, which can arrive at any time between the beginning and the middle of June. Farmers, however, have to decide what seeds to sow in April or May.

There is a local saying, at least a thousand years old, which claims that the monsoon starts 45 days after the flowering of a common tree, *Cassia fistula*. Dr Kanani, an agronomist from Gujarat Agricultural University, has been studying the relationship since 1996, and has found that the tree does successfully predict the approximate date of the monsoon’s arrival.

6. Complete the following notes of the key points.
   a) Indian scientists checking ancient ..........................................
   b) Old saying links monsoon to .............................................
   c) Used by farmers to select peanuts (for wet) or ...................
   d) Dr Kanani of Gujarat Agricultural University has found that .................................................................

7. Link the notes together to make a complete summary using conjunctions where necessary. Check the final text for factual accuracy.

   Indian scientists are checking
8. The original text was about 150 words. The summary above uses about 50, so the original has been reduced by about 65%. However, it might be necessary to summarise still further. Using the same techniques, summarise the summary in about twenty words.

9. Summarise the following article in about 75 words.

South Korea is planning to move its capital from Seoul to a new site in the middle of the country. Although Seoul has been the capital since the fourteenth century, the city of over 20 million is now very crowded, and also close to the hostile armies of North Korea. The new capital is planned to cost $45 billion, with construction finishing by 2012.

There is, however, strong opposition to the project, since similar schemes in other countries have taken far longer and cost much more than originally planned. Australia, for example, took over 70 years to finish building Canberra, while Nigeria has never completed its planned new capital, Abuja. Both Brazil and Malaysia have found that the building of new capitals (Brasilia and Putrajaya) can sharply increase the national burden of debt. Even if the government does eventually move to the new capital, it is unlikely that South Korea’s main businesses will follow it, so Seoul will probably continue to be the country’s principal city.
1.10 Combining Sources

Most essays require the writer to read more than one book or article. Your essay should include a summary of the views of the different sources you have studied. In some cases the contrast between the ideas of different writers may be the focus of the essay. This unit examines ways of presenting such varying views.

1. Read the example, from a study of women’s experience of prison.

According to Giallombardo (1966), women alleviated the pains of imprisonment by developing kinship links with other inmates. Similarly, Heffernan (1972) found that adaptation to prison was facilitated by the creation of a pseudo-family. Owen (1998) also notes that the female subculture is based on personal relationships with other women inmates. Others, however, believe that the subculture in women’s prisons is undergoing a gradual shift that more closely resembles that of male prisons.

Fox (1982) states, for example, that the cooperative caring prison community that has embodied characterizations of female prisons has evolved into a more dangerous and competitive climate.

a) How many writers are mentioned?
b) What is the function of the words in italics?
c) What phrase is used to mark the point in the text where there is a shift from one point of view to another?

2. Below are two sources used for an essay titled ‘Should genetically modified (GM) foods have a role in future agriculture?’

Read the sources first, then the essay extract.

Source A

Genetic modification (GM) is the most recent application of biotechnology to food, which can also be called genetic engineering or genetic manipulation. The phrase ‘genetically modified organisms’ or GMOs is used frequently in the scientific literature to describe plants and animals which have had DNA introduced into them by means other than the ‘natural’ process of an egg and a sperm.

New species have always evolved through natural selection by means of random genetic variation. Early farmers used this natural variation to selectively breed wild animals, plants and even micro-organisms such as yogurt cultures and yeasts. They produced domesticated variants better suited to the needs of humans, long before the scientific basis for the process was understood. Despite this long history of careful improvement, such procedures are now labelled ‘interfering with nature’.
Source B

Genetic modification (GM) is in fact far more than a mere development of selective breeding techniques. Combining genetic material from species that cannot breed naturally is an interference in areas which may be highly dangerous. The consequences of this kind of manipulation cannot be foreseen.

It seems undeniable that these processes may lead to major benefits in food production and the environment. Furthermore, there is no doubt that some medical advances may have saved millions of lives. However, this level of technology can contain a strong element of risk.

Our ignorance of the long-term effects of releasing GM plants or even animals into the environment means that this step should only be taken after very careful consideration.

Essay extract

It has been claimed that GM technology is no different from breeding techniques which have been practised by man for thousands of years. Source A states that this process is similar to natural selection and remarks: 'such procedures are now labelled “interfering with nature”'. On the other hand Source B considers that, although GM technology could bring considerable benefits in medicine and agriculture, it is quite different to traditional processes of selection. He believes that crossing the species barrier is a dangerous step and that there is insufficient knowledge of the long-term results of such developments.

3. The essay writer uses a mixture of direct quotes and summaries of arguments.
   a) Find an example of each.
   b) What phrase does the writer use to mark the point where he moves from dealing with Source A to Source B?
   c) List all the phrases used to introduce summaries.
      It has been claimed that

4. You are preparing to write an essay titled ‘The social effects of tourism in developing countries’.
   Read the sources and then complete the paragraph comparing their views, as in the example above.
Source C

When countries begin to provide facilities for mass tourism, such as hotels and leisure complexes, there is an immediate demand for labour. Work is created for cleaners, waiters, gardeners and drivers on a scale which may significantly boost the local economy. Such work may provide opportunities to learn valuable new skills. For many, these semi-skilled jobs provide an attractive alternative to subsistence agriculture or fishing, while at the same time the tax revenues from their earnings increase the national income.

Source D

One inevitable feature of tourism’s growth is the creation of badly-paid, seasonal jobs in holiday resorts. Much of this work combines insecurity with long hours of work in poor conditions. In Thailand, for example, there are cases of hotel maids working 15-hour days for less than $4. Moreover, the combination of wealthy tourists being served by impoverished workers is likely to increase social tensions in these areas. Another risk is that natural or human disasters such as wars and earthquakes may drive visitors away without warning, leaving tens of thousands unemployed.

Source E

In defence of the tourist industry, it has been claimed that the development of tourism played a major part in helping to modernise parts of Franco’s Spain in the 1960s. The presence of easy-going, affluent visitors apparently encouraged locals to learn new skills and open new businesses. Despite this positive interpretation, many examples could be presented where the arrival of rich and idle tourists has been an encouragement for crime, prostitution and other less desirable aspects of the modern economy. Much seems to depend on the economic alternatives offered by the society, and of course the scale of tourist arrivals.

It has been argued that tourism can have a very positive social influence on a developing country. Source C claims that
1.11 Planning Essays

Outline planning was examined in Unit 1.3. Planning gives essays a coherent structure and, most importantly, helps to ensure that they answer the question set. Although all essays need planning, they are written in two different situations: as coursework, and in exams. Clearly, under the time pressure of an exam, planning is more hurried, but can also be more critical. This unit looks first at planning in exams, and then for coursework.

1. In the case of essays written in exams, it is best to begin planning by analysing the title and then writing down any ideas that seem relevant. This process is called ‘brainstorming’, and at first ideas are collected in any order.

Read the title below and add more ideas to the list.

Outline the development of the modern tourist industry.

- development of passenger jet aircraft in late 1950s
- package holidays became popular in 1960s
- increased leisure time in developed countries
- 
- 
- 

2. Having assembled your ideas, it is then necessary to find a suitable framework for the essay. A structure may be suggested by the title of the essay. There are a number of common structures used in essay writing.

Which one would be most suitable for the title above?

a) **Time** – usually from the past to the present or future, as narrative.

b) **Comparison** – two or more topics are examined and compared, one after the other.

c) **For and against** – the advantages and disadvantages of two systems are discussed.

3. Complete the plan using ideas from (1).

Outline the development of the modern tourist industry.

a) Introduction: Current situation: growing demand/current problems, e.g. pollution

b) Main body:

   i) mass tourism began in 1960s with development of jet aircraft

   ii)
iii)
iv)
c) Conclusion:

4. Decide which of the three structures in (2) would be most suitable for the following titles.
   a) Prisons make criminals worse, and should be abolished – discuss.
   b) In the UK, radio is gaining audience while TV is losing viewers. Consider possible reasons.
   c) Trace the development of mass production and evaluate its main benefits.
   d) ‘Examinations can never be fair.’ To what extent is this true?
   e) The internet will make books redundant in twenty years – discuss.

5. Study the title below and the ideas collected for the essay. Add to the list if possible. Then choose a suitable framework and complete the plan below.

   Compare the effects of advertising on TV with advertising in newspapers. What are the main differences? Are there any similarities?

   TV adverts more lively, dynamic
   newspaper adverts can be targeted at a special market, e.g. local
   TV advertising very expensive (to make and show)
   many people video TV and fast forward adverts
   newspaper adverts can be prepared more quickly
   TV adverts can reach a wider audience

   a) Introduction: role of newspapers and TV in society today
   b) Main body:
      i)
      ii)
iii)
iv)
c) Conclusion:

6. Choose one of the titles below and note at least six ideas that might be used in the essay. Then select a suitable framework and write a plan.

a) In 20 years’ time most learning will be on-line: the internet will replace the classroom – discuss.

b) Describe the education system in your country and suggest how it could be improved.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ideas</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. In the case of longer essays, written as coursework, planning should be more detailed. It will normally be a two-stage process:

a) before reading: using the title to develop an outline structure

b) after reading: modifying the outline and adding detail

Study the notes below. Use them to write a plan for the title.

Title: Student numbers in higher education are rising in most countries. Is it desirable to keep increasing the numbers of young people who take a degree?

a) In 1985 12% of young people went to university in the UK. Now the figure is over 30%. Similar growth has been experienced in many countries, developed and developing.
b) Recent research (Jackson et al.) shows that employers are looking for personal skills rather than educational qualifications.

c) The average student in Britain now leaves university with debts of £15,000.

d) University education may help students from poorer families to move into a higher social position.

e) Modern economies are based on knowledge. Therefore, every country needs to educate its workforce as highly as possible to compete with other economies.

f) Because increasing numbers of young people are gaining a first degree, their degrees are worth less. It is now necessary to have a second degree to compete in the labour market.

g) As student numbers rise, standards fall. Classrooms become more crowded, and overworked teachers are less able to give students personal attention.
1.12 Organising Paragraphs

Paranphaphs are the basic building blocks of texts. Well-organised paragraphs not only help readers understand the argument, they also help writers to structure their ideas effectively.

1. Read the following paragraph.

The way we use banks is currently changing. This is partly because of the introduction of new technology in the last ten years. The personal computer and the internet, for instance, allow customers to view their accounts at home and perform operations such as moving money between accounts. At the same time banks are being reorganised in ways that affect both customers and staff. In the past five years over 3,000 bank branches have closed in Britain. The banks have discovered that staffing call centres is cheaper than running a branch network.

The structure of the paragraph is:

| 1. topic sentence | The way we use banks . . . |
| 2. reason         | This is partly because . . . |
| 3. example        | The personal computer . . . |
| 4. information    | At the same time banks . . . |
| 5. information    | In the past five years . . . |
| 6. reason         | The banks have discovered . . |

2. a) A paragraph is a collection of sentences which deal with one subject.

b) All paragraphs contain a topic sentence, which is often, but not always, the first.

c) Other components vary according to the nature of the topic. Introductory paragraphs often contain definitions, while descriptive paragraphs include a lot of information. Other sentences give examples and offer reasons and restatements.

3. Read and analyse the following paragraph.

In recent years all British universities have adopted the semester system. A semester is a period of time which lasts for half the academic year. Semester 1, for example, starts in September and finishes in January. Previously the academic year had been divided into three terms: autumn, winter and spring. Most courses consist of modules which last for one semester, and exams are held at the end of each. Britain began using semesters to make it easier for international students to move from one country to another.
1. The Romans were the first people to build a bridge near the position of today’s Tower Bridge.

2. Over 500 years ago the area below the bridge had become a major river port for ships trading with Europe.

3. Its dominance is due to its strategic site near the lowest crossing point of the River Thames.

4. For many centuries it has been the centre of the country’s economic, cultural and social life.

5. London has been the English capital for over 1,000 years.

6. Use the table to rewrite the sentences in the correct order.

a) The Romans were the first people to build a bridge near the position of today’s Tower Bridge.

b) London has been the English capital for over 1,000 years.

c) Over 500 years ago the area below the bridge had become a major river port for ships trading with Europe.

d) Its dominance is due to its strategic site near the lowest crossing point of the River Thames.

e) For many centuries it has been the centre of the country’s economic, cultural and social life.
5. The sentences below form a paragraph, but have been mixed up.

Rewrite them in the correct order and analyse the paragraph structure, using the components below.

Topic 1, Topic 2, Example, Information, Reason

a) Even simple words like ‘dinner’ or ‘hello’ were not recognised.

b) Consequently, the keepers have been trained to talk French to the baboons.

c) The zoo realised that the animals were used to hearing commands in French.

d) An English zoo has been given a gift of nineteen baboons by a zoo in Paris.

e) But when the English zoo keepers tried speaking to the animals there was no response.

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6. You are writing an essay on ‘Prisons make criminals worse, and should be abolished’. Using the notes below, complete the introductory paragraph, following the structure provided.

Introduction

Modern prison system developed in nineteenth century
Prisons intended to isolate, punish and reform
Steep rise in number of prisoners in last 20 years
Critics claim they are ‘universities of crime’
Essay aims to consider how effective prisons are

1. The modern prison system . . .
2. The system had three basic aims: . . .
3. However, in the last 20 years . . .
4. Prisons are commonly criticised . . .
5. This essay attempts to evaluate . . .

7. **Using the second set of notes, write the next paragraph of the essay.**

   **Advantages**
   Prisons offer society three apparent benefits
   Provide punishment by deprivation of freedom
   Offenders are segregated so cannot re-offend
   Possibility of reform through training programmes

   1.
   2.
   3.
   4.

8. **Using the next set of notes, write the third paragraph.**

   **Drawbacks**
   Prisons appear to be failing in twenty-first century
   Prison population steadily rising in many countries
   Many prisoners are ‘repeat offenders’
   Few prisons able to offer effective reform programmes
   Prison conditions often brutal and degrading
9. Write a concluding paragraph, summarising the previous points and using your own ideas, to answer the title given.
1.13 Organising the Main Body

This and the next two units deal with the organisation of the main body, the introduction and the conclusion. In the case of longer assignments it is often better to write the main body before the introduction. With shorter essays, for example in exams, this is impractical, and the introduction has to be written first.

1. The structure of the main body depends on the length of the essay and the subject of study.

   Shorter essays (in exams, for example) tend to have simpler structures:

   Description/development
   A → B → C → D

   For and against
   X Y or X Y
   X1 Y1 X1 Y1
   X2 Y2 X2 Y2

   Comparison/evaluation
   J K L
   J1 K1 L1
   J2 K2 L2

Match the examples of plans for main bodies below to the structures above.

a) Prisons make criminals worse, and should be abolished – discuss.
   i) benefit of prisons – deterrence
   ii) benefit of prisons – removes dangerous people from society
   iii) drawback of prisons – prisoners lose contact with non-criminal society
   iv) drawback of prisons – prisoners become bitter and learn criminal techniques

b) In the UK, radio is gaining audience while TV is losing viewers. Consider possible reasons.
   i) radio can be listened to in many situations
   ii) radio offers a wide variety of programme types
   iii) TV lacks flexibility, needs full attention
   iv) economic factors: TV more expensive to buy/programmes more expensive to make

c) Trace the development of the factory system and describe its social impact.
   i) factories originally sited to make use of water power (in eighteenth century)
1.13 Organising the Main Body

ii) first factories employed unskilled workers; often women and children

iii) in nineteenth century factories built near canals/railways for access to markets

iv) later some employers offered social benefits, e.g. housing/education

2. Inside the main body, ideas need to be presented in the most logical fashion, linked together to form a coherent argument.

Select a suitable structure from (1) and reorganise the notes below in the best order.

Lowering the minimum school leaving age to 14 would allow teachers to focus on teaching the students who wanted to be in school – discuss.

if they left at 14, students would be unlikely to find proper jobs

some students more suited to work which doesn’t require qualifications

problem students waste everybody’s time, including their own

effort should be made in primary schools to prevent pupils falling behind

many older students have lost interest in learning and disrupt classes

in future, almost all jobs will demand academic skills

3. Longer essays may include the following sections:

**Literature review** – a summary of the main authorities on this topic

**Experimental set-up** – a technical description of the organisation of an experiment

**Methods** – how the research was carried out

**Findings/results** – what was discovered by the research/experiment

**Case study** – a description of an example of the topic being researched

**Discussion** – an examination of the issues and the writer’s verdict

The sections below constitute the main body of an essay titled ‘Studying abroad: an analysis of costs and benefits’. Decide on the heading of each section and the best order (1–5) for them.
a) Comparisons of the advantages and disadvantages that students mentioned about study abroad and an attempt to decide if most students benefited from the experience.

b) Aims of the survey and how the researcher conducted it.

c) An extensive study of two students (from different cultures) studying in Britain who were interviewed by the researcher.

d) A report of what the survey found, with statistical analysis.

e) A synopsis of the recent published research in this area.

4. Special phrases can be used to mark the beginning of new paragraphs, or the introduction of new topics.

To introduce a new paragraph/topic:

The main/chief factor/issue is . . .

Turning to the subject of . . .

Moving on to the question of . . .

Another important area is . . .

. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . should also be examined

To add information inside a paragraph:

a) Firstly, . . . The first point . . . In the first place . . .

b) Secondly . . . Next, . . . Then, . . .

In addition . . . Moreover . . .

c) Finally . . . Lastly . . .

5. Complete the following extract from an essay on ‘British weather’ with suitable phrases.

The British are famous all over the world for their obsession with the weather, but in fact the reality is more complex than is often believed. This essay sets out to examine some of the principal influences on the weather of the British Isles.

. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . is the geographical position of Britain, situated on the extreme western edge of the European continent. This means that a variety of weather types can dominate the country . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . the Atlantic Ocean can produce warm wet winds, especially in winter . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . the land mass of Europe can create anticyclonic weather, hot in summer
and cold in winter. The polar region to the north can generate cold winds at most seasons of the year.

Variations within Britain, there are significant differences between regions. The south of England can be much warmer than the north of Scotland, especially in winter. The west of Britain is usually much wetter than the east. Even in the same district, hilly areas will be cooler and wetter than the lowlands.

Is seasonal change, which in Britain is less distinct than in many countries. The Atlantic moderates extreme types of weather, and the weather pattern can change radically from year to year. As a result, warm days in winter and chilly summer winds frequently surprise visitors to this country.
1.14 Introductions

An introduction is crucial, not just for what it says about the topic, but for what it tells the reader about the writer’s style and approach. Unless you can introduce the subject clearly the reader may not wish to continue.

1. What is the purpose of the introduction to an essay? Choose from the items below:
   a) to define some of the terms in the title
   b) to give your opinion of the subject
   c) to show that you have read some research on the subject
   d) to show that the subject is worth writing about
   e) to explain which areas of the subject you will deal with
   f) to get the reader’s attention with a provocative idea
   g) to show how you intend to organise your essay

2. Study the extracts from introductions below, and decide which of the functions in the box they fulfil.

   i) explain starting point for research
   ii) state aims/goals
   iii) refer to recent research in same area
   iv) give results of research
   v) provide background information
   vi) concede limitations

   a) In many companies, the knowledge of most employees remains untapped for solving problems and generating new ideas.

   b) This paper positions call centres at the core of the mix of technologies public administration can use to innovate e-commerce.

   c) In fact, this is one of our main findings based on an extended sample period up to 1998.

   d) Admittedly, the tenor of my argument is tentative and exploratory.

   e) The purpose of this paper is to investigate changes in the incidence of extreme warm and cold temperatures over the globe since 1870 . . .
f) To what extent do increases in the food available per person at a national level contribute to reductions in child malnutrition? This question has generated a wide range of responses (Haddad et al., 1997).

3. There is no such thing as a standard introduction, and much depends on the nature of the research and the length of the essay. However, for a relatively short essay written under exam conditions, the following are worth including, in this order.

   a) Definitions of any terms in the title that are unclear
   b) Some background information
   c) Reference to other writers who have discussed this topic
   d) Your purpose in writing and the importance of the subject
   e) Any limitations, e.g. geographical or chronological, that you set yourself
   f) A summary of the main points you intend to cover

   a) It may be necessary to clarify some of the words in the title. This may be because they are not in common use or have a specialised meaning.

   Discuss the Impact of Privatisation on the British Economy.

   Privatisation is the process of transferring certain industries from state control to the private sector, which began in Britain in 1981 with British Telecom . . .

   b) Background information helps to give a context for your essay.

   In recent years the privatisation of state owned businesses, especially monopoly utilities such as electricity and telecoms, has become widespread in both developed and developing nations.

   c) It is important to show that you are familiar with current research. This can be demonstrated using phrases such as:

   A number of researchers have examined this issue, notably . . .

   Various investigations have explored the subject, especially . . .

   d) You must show the importance of the topic. This can be either in the academic world, or as a contemporary issue of wider relevance.
As privatisation is increasingly seen as a remedy for economic ills in many other countries, it is worth examining its impact in Britain, which was a pioneer in this process.

e) As you are only writing an essay, not a book, it is obviously not possible to deal with all aspects of your subject. Therefore you need to explain what limits you are setting on the discussion, and possibly give reasons for this.

Only privatisations completed between 1981–95 will be dealt with, as it is too soon to assess the impact of later developments.

f) For your own benefit, as well as the reader’s, it is useful to outline how the essay will be organised.

An assessment will first be made of the performance of the privatised industries themselves, on an individual basis, and then the performance of the economy as a whole will be examined.

4. Prepare to write an introduction to an essay with the title ‘Higher education should be available to everyone – discuss’ by answering the questions below.

a) Which terms in the title might need defining?

b) What background information could you give?

c) How can you show the current relevance of this topic, either in Britain or another country?

d) How are you going to limit your discussion: geographically, historically or both?

e) How will you organise the main body of the essay?
(As this is a short essay, it is not necessary to mention sources in the introduction.)

5. Write the introduction (about 100 words) in the space below, using your answers from (4) and the notes provided below.

**Definition:** Higher education (HE) = university education

**Background:** Increasing demand for HE worldwide puts pressure on national budgets > many states seek to shift costs to students

**Relevance:** In most countries degree = key to better jobs and opportunities

**Discussion points:**
- If students have to pay more of cost, discriminates against poorer families
- Is it fair for all taxpayers to support students?
- How to keep HE open to able students from all backgrounds?

6. Write an introduction to an essay on one of the following titles, or choose a subject from your own discipline.

   a) Compare the urbanisation process in the First and the Third Worlds.

   b) Assess the importance of public transport in the modern city.

   c) ‘Lawyers are inflating the cost of medicine’ – discuss.

   d) To what extent is a democratic system necessary for economic development?
1.15 Conclusions

There is usually a link between the starting point, i.e. the title, and the conclusion. If the title is asking a question the answer should be contained in the conclusion. The reader may look at the conclusion first to get a summary of the main arguments or points.

1. Not every academic essay has a conclusion. In some cases it may be linked to the discussion section, or it may be called ‘concluding remarks’, or ‘summary’. However, in most cases it is helpful for the reader to have a section which (quite briefly) looks back at what has been said and makes some comments about the main part.

Read the following extracts from conclusions and match them with the list of functions in the box.

- i) comparisons with other studies
- ii) summary of main body
- iii) limitations of research
- iv) suggestions for further research
- v) practical implications and proposals

a) In this review, attempts have been made to summarise and assess the current research trends of transgenic rice dealing exclusively with agronomically important genes.

b) As always, this investigation has a number of limitations to be considered in evaluating its findings.

c) Obviously, business expatriates could benefit from being informed that problem focused coping strategies are more effective than symptom focused ones.

d) Another line of research worth pursuing further is to study the importance of language for expatriate assignments.

e) Our review of thirteen studies of strikes in public transport demonstrates that the effect of a strike on public transport ridership varies and may either be temporary or permanent . . .

f) These results of the Colombia study reported here are consistent with other similar studies conducted in other countries (Baron and Norman, 1992).

g) To be more precise, there was a positive relation between tolerant and patient problem solving and all four measures of adjustment: general, interaction, work and subjective well-being.
To empirically test this conjecture, we need more cross-national replication of this research.

2. Compare the following conclusions to two essays on 'Public transport in a modern economy'. Complete the table to show the main differences between them.

a) As has been shown, public transport is likely to play an important role in the future. Despite possible changes in patterns of work and leisure, it seems likely that mass transport systems will remain necessary for the efficient movement of people. What is not clear is how such transport systems should be funded. Various schemes have been discussed, but the most effective model will probably contain some element of public funding. Market forces alone are unlikely to provide a satisfactory solution. This is in broad agreement with the views of most other recent commentators, notably Tilic (1998) and Vardy (2002).

b) In such a brief study it is hard to draw definite conclusions about the future shape of public transport. In addition space has not permitted an examination of the situation in Asia, where significant growth of public transport has taken place. The main areas of debate have been outlined, but much more research is needed before firm conclusions can be drawn. Whether public transport flourishes or deteriorates in future is still unclear, though further studies, especially in the field of public/private partnerships, may eventually suggest an answer.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. As illustrated in (1), the following components may be found in conclusions.

*Decide on the most suitable order for them (1–5).*

- Implications of the findings
- Proposals for further research
- Limitations of the research
4. Below are notes for the main body of an essay. Read the notes and complete the conclusion, using your own ideas if necessary.

Cultural adaptation among overseas students at an Australian university.

a) **The research programme**

   *purpose*: to study how students from different cultural backgrounds adapt to academic life in Australia

   *size and method*: 250 questionnaires returned (30% Chinese, 25% SE Asian, 20% Middle Eastern, 25% other)

b) **Findings** – culture was only one factor in determining successful adaptation

   Other important factors: age/previous experience of living abroad/language proficiency

c) **Discussion** – how accurate was research? How could it have been improved? What can be done to help students adapt better?

| **Summary** | The aim of the study was to explore differing degrees of adjustment to life at an Australian university among overseas students from a variety of cultural backgrounds. 250 valid questionnaires were completed, representing about a third of the overseas student population, with significant numbers of Chinese, SE Asian and Middle Eastern students. The results suggest |
| **Implications** | |
| **Limitations** | |
| **Proposals for further research** | |
5. Study the notes for the essay below and write a conclusion in about 100 words.

A comparison of classroom learning with internet-based teaching.

a) Reasons for increasing use of on-line education:
   - cheaper if large numbers involved
   - allows students to study in their own time
   - students do not have to travel to university

b) Reasons why classroom based education remains popular:
   - students can be part of group; receive support and advice; learn from colleagues
   - students have face-to-face contact with a teacher
   - is seen as traditional and effective

c) Discussion
   - can a solitary student in front of a computer enjoy the same learning experience as a member of a class?
   - pressure of numbers in universities makes more on-line education likely
   - is internet learning really a new method of education? Distance learning has been popular for many years (e.g. Open University)
When you have finished the conclusion it may be tempting to hand in your work immediately. However, it is almost certain that it can be improved by being revised. With longer assignments, it may be worth asking a classmate to read your work and make criticisms. Proof-reading is a vital final step, which can prevent confusion or misunderstanding due to simple errors. Computer programs that check spelling will not detect other common types of mistakes.

Rewriting

1. After finishing the first draft of an essay you should, if you have time, wait for a while and then re-read it, asking the following questions.
   a) How well does this answer the question in the title?
   b) Have I forgotten any points which would strengthen the development?
   c) Is it clearly structured and well linked together?

2. Read this short essay written by a Japanese student on the title ‘Compare the university system in your country with the British system’. Answer the questions above as you read.

   It is said that there are large differences in the teaching methods between British universities and Japanese ones. Courses in British universities consist mainly of lectures, discussions, presentations and tutorials and students study specifically their major subject. On the other hand, Japanese universities normally only have lectures in the first two years and students have to study a wide range of subjects in addition to their major. The aim of this essay is to compare and analyse each system.

   In British universities, students need a more active attitude in their study than Japanese students. They need to prepare for presentations and discussions. This is useful for learning because they take much time for study outside the classroom and as they become familiar with their subjects they will become more interested in them.

   In Japan, students’ attitude is amazingly passive and they study only just before exams.

   The other difference between British universities and Japanese ones is, as mentioned above, British students concentrate on their major subject and gain specific knowledge about it. Japanese students, however, gain wider knowledge by studying a few other subjects in addition to their major. This system gives students apparently much knowledge but they cannot study their major deeply and their knowledge is wide-ranging but not useful.
In conclusion, British teaching methods give students more chance to know the subject thoroughly compared to Japanese teaching methods, but Japanese methods are suitable for students who are eager to gain a wide range of knowledge and like to study on their own. It is hard to say which is better, it depends on students.

3. A careful re-reading of the essay would suggest the following points.

a) The essay only partly answers the title. It looks at university life from a student’s position, but does not really deal with the ‘system’ as a whole. The last line of the conclusion discusses a question not asked in the title.

b) To deal with the subject more fully the writer needs to examine topics such as length of courses, funding of students and admission procedures. If there is not space to discuss these in detail they must be at least mentioned, to show that the writer is aware that they are central to the subject.

c) The introduction needs to be more general. It goes straight to a comparison of teaching methods. This could be in the main body. Otherwise the essay is well organised and quite logical.
4. Use the notes below to rewrite the introductory paragraph. (NB It is not necessary to include more details than are given below.)

- university education important in both UK and Japan (over 30% 18-year-olds)
- main points for comparison
  - a) admissions
  - b) length of courses: first and higher degrees
  - c) teaching methods
  - d) assessment
  - e) financial support
- essay will examine each point and analyse differences between countries

In both Britain and Japan, university education is undertaken by a significant number (more than 30%) of all young people after leaving school.
Proof-reading

5. Before handing in any piece of written work for marking, it is important to check it carefully for errors which may distort your meaning or make your work difficult to understand.

The following examples each contain one common type of error. Underline the error and match it to the list of error types in the box.

| i) factual | v) vocabulary | ix) missing word |
| ii) word ending | vi) spelling | x) unnecessary word |
| iii) punctuation | vii) singular/plural |
| iv) tense | viii) style |

a) The natural poorness of Japan has been overcome . . .
b) In 1980 in the United States there is 140,000 people who . . .
c) Actually, hardly any of these has succeeded . . .
d) . . . to choose the most suitable area in which they can success.
e) Chinese history reflects in real social and cultural changes.
f) The highest rate of imprisonment was regestred in the USA . . .
g) Malaria is on the increase in countries such as Africa . . .
h) I am very interested in German economy . . .
i) . . . the french system is quite different.
j) You don’t always know which method is best.

6. When proof-reading it is a good idea to exchange texts with another student, since you may become overfamiliar with your own work. However, even in exam conditions, when this is not possible, it is vital to spend a few minutes checking through your work as this may reveal careless errors that can be quickly corrected.

Underline and correct the errors in the extracts below (one or two in each).

a) The graph shows changes in the number of prisoners over 5 years (1930–80).
b) . . . the way the government prepares his citizens to contribute in the development . . .

c) Secondly, education not only teach people many knowledge . . .

d) However, weather it is the most important factor is the issue . . .

e) There has been a sharp decrease between 1930 and 1950.

f) The quality of a society depends in the education level.

g) America had the biggest figure for crime . . .

7. Proof-reading a longer text is more difficult. The following is an extract from an essay comparing university education in Taiwan and the UK.

Correct any errors you find.

There are many similarities to the UK and Taiwan, for example course fees, assessment and so on. Firstly, both UK universities and Taiwan universities charge fees from students, but course fees in the UK is as expensive as that in Taiwan. In addition, teaching methods are very similar to both of countries. Students should attend lectures and seminars. Moreover, they have the same system to assess students, which are examined at the end of semester.

Nevertheless, there are three main differences: how students can entry a university and how much percentage of students are in higher education. Students in higher education in Taiwan are twice more than in the UK
Student Introduction

The Elements of Writing are the various skills that are needed for most types of academic writing, whether it is a short report, a long essay or a dissertation. Many essays, for instance, begin by defining a term in the title (unit 2.5 Definitions), then make some generalisations about the subject (unit 2.8 Generalisations) before going on to give examples of the main areas the writer wishes to examine (unit 2.7 Examples). Throughout the essay the writer needs to provide references to sources used (unit 2.11 References and Quotations) and to employ an appropriate academic style (unit 2.13 Style). Many academic subjects also require discussion of statistics (unit 2.9 Numbers), and graphs and charts (unit 2.16 Visual Information).

In the case of unit 2.4 Comparison and unit 2.6 Discussion, students should note that the comparison or discussion might apply to the overall pattern of the essay or to just one section. It is common, for instance, for longer essays to have a discussion section before the conclusion.

There is no fixed order for working on the units in Elements of Writing. They are organised alphabetically for easy access, and most students will have their own priorities. As in Part 1, the cross-reference boxes provide links to other relevant units.
### 1. Study the organisation of the following paragraph:

Currently, roads are often congested, which is expensive in terms of delays. It is claimed that building more roads, or widening existing ones, would ease the congestion. But not only is the cost of such work high, but the construction process adds to the congestion, while the resulting extra road space may encourage extra traffic. Therefore constructing extra roads is unlikely to solve the problem, and other remedies, such as road pricing or greater use of public transport, should be examined.

| a) Problem | Currently, roads are often congested, which is . . . |
| b) Solution A | It is claimed that building more roads, or widening . . . |
| c) Argument against solution A | But not only is the cost of such work high, but . . . |
| d) Solutions B and C | . . . other remedies, such as road pricing or greater use . . . |

### 2. The same ideas could be presented to arrive at a different conclusion:

Currently, roads are often congested, which is expensive in terms of delays. It is claimed that building more roads is costly, increases congestion and will encourage extra traffic. This may be partly true, but the alternatives are equally problematic. Road pricing has many practical difficulties, while people are reluctant to use public transport. There is little alternative to a road building programme except increasing road chaos.

| Problem | Currently, roads are often congested, which is . . . |
| Solution A | building more roads . . . |
| Arguments against solution A | It is claimed that building more roads is costly, increases . . . |
| Solutions B and C and arguments against | Road pricing has many practical difficulties, while people are . . . |
| Conclusion in favour of solution A | There is little alternative to a road building programme . . . |
3. **Analyse the following paragraph in a similar way:**

Obesity is a growing problem in many countries. It can lead to various medical conditions which increase the demand for public health services. There is no clear agreement on the causes of the condition, although some doctors blame a sedentary lifestyle. This does not explain why only certain people suffer from the condition, while others are not affected. Another theory is that a high fat diet, linked to modern processed food, is to blame. Recent research shows that most obesity sufferers do eat this unhealthy diet.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cause A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argument against cause A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cause B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conclusion in favour of B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. **Use the following points to build an argument in one paragraph:**

**Topic:** University expansion

**Problem:** Demand for university places is growing, leading to overcrowding

**Solution A:** Increase fees to reduce demand

**Argument against A:** Unfair to poorer students

**Solution B:** Government pays to expand universities

**Argument against B:** Unfair to average taxpayer who would be subsidising the education of a minority who will earn high salaries

**Conclusion:** Government subsidises poorer students
5. Think of a similar debate in your own subject. Complete the table and write a paragraph which leads to a conclusion.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Problem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solution A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argument against A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solution B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argument against B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Solution C)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conclusion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.2 Cause and Effect

1. The relationship between two situations can be shown in a variety of ways:

   - **CAUSE:** heavy rain
   - **EFFECT:** flooding

   Heavy rain causes flooding.
   Heavy rain leads to flooding.
   Heavy rain results in flooding.
   Heavy rain produces flooding.

   - **EFFECT:** flooding
   - **CAUSE:** heavy rain

   Flooding is caused by heavy rain. (note use of passive)
   Flooding is produced by heavy rain.
   Flooding results from heavy rain.

2. It is also possible to use conjunctions which demonstrate cause and effect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>because (of)</td>
<td>so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>since</td>
<td>therefore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as</td>
<td>consequently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>owing to</td>
<td>which is why</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>due to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   *Because* it rained heavily, the flooding was severe. (because + verb)
   The flooding occurred *because of* days of heavy rain. (because + noun)
   *As/since* it rained heavily, the flooding was severe. (conjunction + verb)
   *Owing to/due to* the heavy rain the flooding was severe. (conjunction + noun)
   (also: Owing to it raining . . .)
It rained heavily for days, therefore the flooding was severe. (used in mid-sentence)

NB It is more common to use conjunctions to illustrate particular situations.

3. Decide whether the following are particular or general, then complete them with a suitable verb or conjunction.

a) Childhood vaccination .................. reduced infant mortality.

b) ........................................ the cold winter hospital admissions increased.

c) Printing money ......................... higher inflation.

d) The summer was extremely dry, .................. many trees died.

e) In 2003, falling sales ......................... the company closing two factories.

Write two more sentences from your own subject area.

f)

g)

4. Use conjunctions to complete the following paragraph.

WHY WOMEN LIVE LONGER

Some British scientists now believe that women live longer than men a) ................. T cells, a vital part of the immune system that protects the body from diseases. Previously, various theories have attempted to explain longer female life expectancy. Biologists claimed that women lived longer b) .................. they need to bring up children. Others argued that men take more risks, c) .................. they die earlier. But a team from Imperial College think that the difference may be d) .................. women having better immune systems. Having studied a group of men and women they found that the body produces fewer T cells as it gets older, e) .................. the ageing process. However, they admit that this may not be the only factor, and f) .................. another research project may be conducted.
5. **Study the flowchart and complete the paragraph which describes it.**

During a recession, government can lower taxes

- people have more money to spend and buy more goods and services
- increased demand for goods and services

- government has higher income from taxation and spends less on social security
- lower unemployment
- more jobs created to satisfy demand

If a country is suffering from economic recession, the government can reduce taxation.

6. **Draw a flowchart similar to the one above, for your own subject, and write a paragraph to describe it.**
2.3 Cohesion

1. Cohesion means linking phrases together so that the whole text is clear and readable. It is achieved by several methods, such as the use of conjunctions. Another is the linking of phrases and sentences with words like he, they and that which refer back to something mentioned before:

   Jane Austen wrote six major novels in her short life. They deal with domestic drama in middle-class families.

Examples of reference words and phrases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronouns</th>
<th>he/she/it/they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Possessive pronouns</td>
<td>his/her/hers/their/their's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Objective pronouns</td>
<td>her/him/them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrative pronouns</td>
<td>this/that/these/those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other phrases</td>
<td>the former/the latter/the first/the second</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Read the following paragraph and complete the table.

Jenkins (1987) has researched the life cycle of new businesses. He found that they have an average life of only 4.7 years. This is due to two main reasons; one economic and one social. The former appears to be a lack of capital, the latter a failure to carry out sufficient market research. Jenkins considers that together these account for approximately 70% of business failures.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Reference word/phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jenkins</td>
<td>he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>new businesses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>average life of only 4.7 years</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one economic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one social</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the former . . . , the latter . . . .</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Read the paragraph and complete the table below to show what the reference words (in italics) refer to.

There is little prospect of improvement in the standard of living of the villagers from their present low level without the support of electricity. Presently, the households can enjoy only a limited number of hours of illumination based on kerosene or diesel. These are not cheap and so are not affordable by a large majority of the rural masses. This restricts the range as well as the intensity of their activities severely. But even if supply of power from these sources is available more abundantly, there is the problem of adverse environmental effects of such use.
4. In the following paragraph, insert suitable reference words from the box below in the gaps.

Disposable razor blades were invented by Gillette at the beginning of the twentieth century. a) . . . . . . . . . were a simple idea but at first b) . . . . . . . . . found it very hard to sell c) . . . . . . . . . . use was because nobody had marketed a throw-away product before. However, e) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . use of advertising to stimulate demand gradually increased sales and before long f) . . . . . . . . became a millionaire.

he x 2/his/them/this/they

5. Complete these paragraphs with suitable reference words from the table in (1).

A) The Victoria and Albert Museum is in South Kensington in London. a) . . . . . . . is named after Queen Victoria and b) . . . . . . . husband, Prince Albert. c) . . . . . . . was made Queen in 1837, and married d) . . . . . . . three years later. e) . . . . . . . . . . . . . had a happy marriage which produced nine children. f) . . . . . . . . . . . life together was quite simple, although g) . . . . . . . was the queen of the world’s most powerful nation. Albert had a serious character, and perhaps h) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . major achievement was to organise the Great Exhibition of 1851, the profits from which helped to build the Museum.

B) One group of commentators have little faith in the ability of food availability to improve child nutrition. a) . . . . . . . . . . . arguments are supported by the fact that over two-thirds of malnourished children live in countries with food supplies adequate for b) . . . . . . . . . . . . populations’ needs. c) . . . . . . . . . point to problems of poverty and to non-food factors, such as children’s health and the quality of d) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . care. e) . . . . . . . . . . . belief is that both, but especially f) . . . . . . . . . . (which is increasing in many countries), play a more significant part in malnutrition than is often admitted.
2.4 Comparison

1. The two basic comparative forms are:
   The Pacific Ocean is larger than the Atlantic.
   His work is more interesting than hers.
   a) -er is added to one-syllable adjectives (slow/slower) and
      two-syllable adjectives ending in -y (easy/easier).
   b) more . . . . . . . . . . . . is used with words of two or more
      syllables.
      careful/more careful quickly/more quickly
   However, there are some two-syllable words that can use
   either form:
      simple/simpler/more simple

2. Comparisons can be made more exact by using slightly, much,
   considerably, far or significantly before the comparative:
   Dickens’ novels are considerably longer than Austen’s.
   The new Mercedes is slightly more economical than the old model.

3. Study the table and complete the comparisons below.

   Cost of sending a letter to a domestic destination (Eurocents)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Cost</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Britain</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   a) Letters in Japan are . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . in Britain.
   b) Spanish letters are . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . German letters.
   c) British letters are . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . French ones.
   d) Letters in Germany are . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . in America.

4. The form as . . . . . . . . . . . . as can be used to stress similarity:
   British letters are nearly as expensive as Japanese letters.
   It can also be used for quantitative comparison:
   German letters are twice as expensive as American letters.
   (Also: half as/three times as/etc.)
5. **Note the variety of forms possible:**

   German letters are more expensive than French (ones/letters). (least formal)

   Letters in Germany are more expensive than (those) in France.

   The cost of sending a letter is higher in Germany than in France. (most formal)

   *(High/low are used for comparing abstract concepts such as rates.)*

   Ones can replace the noun when used with an adjective:

   German letters are more expensive than Japanese ones.

   But not in combination with a noun:

   Family cars are cheaper than sports cars. (not sports ones)

6. **More/less, the most/the least (followed by adjective), the most/the fewest (related to number)**

   Divorce is less common in Greece than in Britain.

   The School of Education offers the most modules. (more than others)

   *The most crowded* country in Europe is Holland.

   NB Superlatives (most crowded/least visited) must be defined, e.g. in Europe/in 1996.

7. **Complete the following description of the table above (one word per gap):**

   According to the table, Spain is the a) . . . . . . . . . . . . expensive country for sending a domestic letter. The USA is b) . . . . . . . . . . . more expensive, while the cost in Britain is c) . . . . . . . . . . . . the same d) . . . . . . . . . . in Japan. France and Germany are the e) . . . . . . . . . . . . expensive countries, France being 20% cheaper f) . . . . . . . . . . Germany. Overall, posting a letter costs g) . . . . . . . . . . . . as much in Spain h) . . . . . . . . . . . . in Germany.
8. **Study the table and complete the text below (one word per gap).**

**American spending on leisure activities, 1997, $billion**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Video, audio and computers</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Books and newspapers</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Casino gambling</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lotteries</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recorded music</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theme parks</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video games</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spectator sports</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cinema tickets</td>
<td>5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Racecourse betting</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The table shows that Americans spend the

a) ............ money ($80 bn) on video, audio and computer equipment. They spend 40% b) ............ on books and newspapers, while casinos, in third place, are c) ............ popular d) ............ lotteries or recorded music. Americans spend e) ............ more on theme parks than f) ............ video games, and the cinema, in ninth place, is nearly g) ............ popular as spectator sports. The h) ............ amount of money is spent on racecourse betting.

9. **Study the table below and complete the paragraph comparing life expectancy in European countries (one word per gap).**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Adult alcohol intake per year (litres)</th>
<th>Cigarettes smoked per day per adult</th>
<th>Life expectancy in years – male</th>
<th>Life expectancy in years – female</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Austria</td>
<td>11.9</td>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>74.2</td>
<td>80.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belgium</td>
<td>11.7</td>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>73.8</td>
<td>80.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Britain</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>74.3</td>
<td>79.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denmark</td>
<td>12.1</td>
<td>4.9</td>
<td>73.1</td>
<td>78.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finland</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>73.3</td>
<td>80.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>14.1</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>74.2</td>
<td>82.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>11.8</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>73.7</td>
<td>80.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>10.4</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>75.1</td>
<td>81.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>74.9</td>
<td>81.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norway</td>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>75.4</td>
<td>81.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portugal</td>
<td>13.6</td>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>71.4</td>
<td>78.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweden</td>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>76.7</td>
<td>81.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>11.8</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>76.1</td>
<td>82.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EU average</td>
<td>11.1</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>74.1</td>
<td>80.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The table a) ............... that Swedish men have the b) ............... life expectancy in Europe, while women live the c) ............... in Switzerland. d) ............... average women in Europe live 6 years longer e) ............... men. Men in Portugal have f) ............... lowest life expectancy (71.4 years), while the lowest for women is Denmark (78.2 years), which is g) ............... less than in Portugal (78.7 years).

10. Complete the following paragraph comparing cigarette smoking in Europe.

The table shows considerable variations in cigarette smoking in Europe. The highest rate is ........................................
..............................................................................................
..............................................................................................
..............................................................................................
..............................................................................................
..............................................................................................
..............................................................................................
..............................................................................................
..............................................................................................
..............................................................................................
..............................................................................................
..............................................................................................

11. Write another paragraph comparing alcohol intake in Europe.
1. In academic writing, definitions are normally needed in two situations:

   In introductions, to clarify a word or phrase in the title.

   More generally, to explain a word or phrase which may be either very technical (and so not in normal dictionaries), very recent, or with no widely agreed meaning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Detail</th>
<th>Use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A lecture</td>
<td>is a formal talk</td>
<td>given to a large group,</td>
<td>often used for teaching.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An assignment</td>
<td>is a task</td>
<td>often given to students</td>
<td>for teaching or assessment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Insert suitable category words in the following definitions.

   a) A barometer is a scientific ................. designed to measure atmospheric pressure.

   b) Kidneys are ................. that separate waste fluid from the blood.

   c) A multi-national company is a business ................. that operates in many countries.

   d) Reinforced concrete is a building ................. consisting of cement, sand and steel rods.

   e) Bullying is a pattern of anti-social ................. found in many schools.

   f) Recycling is a ................. in which materials are used again.

   g) A recession is a ................. of reduced economic activity.

   h) Post codes are a ................. for making mail delivery more efficient.

3. More complete definitions may be written by adding examples or extra information:

   A mortgage is a type of loan (which is) used for buying property, in which the lender has the security of the property.

   Complete and extend the following definitions.

   a) Distillation is a ................. used to ..................

   b) A psychiatrist is a ................. who specialises in ......

   

   cross-reference

   1.14 Introductions
c) An MSc is a .................. awarded on completion of ..........................................

d) A trades union is a(n) ................. which exists to protect .........................

e) Malaria is a ..................... caused by ......................... ................................

f) Wheat is a ................... used for ......................... ..................................

4. Study the following examples and underline the term being defined.

   a) ... the definition for a failed project ... ranges from abandoned projects to projects that do not meet their full potential or simply have schedule overrun problems.

   b) Development is a socioeconomic–technological process having the main objective of raising the standards of living of the people.

   c) Electronic commerce is characterised by an absence of physical proximity between the buyer and seller in conducting the search, assessment and transaction stages of a transaction ... 

   d) Bowlby (1982) suggested that attachment is an organised system whose goal is to make individuals feel safe and secure.

   e) ... the non-linear effect called ‘self-brightening’ in which large-amplitude waves decay more slowly than small-amplitude ones.

The examples above illustrate the variety of methods employed in definitions:

(a) gives various examples which fall into the grouping the author wishes to examine.

(b), (d) and (e) use category words: process, system, effect.

(c) defines the term in a negative way (an absence).

(d) quotes a definition from another writer.

5. When writing introductions, it is often helpful to define a term in the title, even when it may be in common use, to demonstrate that you have thought about it and that you have a clear idea what it means in your essay.

   Title: Higher education should be free and open to all – discuss.
Higher education in Britain means university-level study for first or higher degrees, normally at the age of 18 or above.

**Study the following titles, decide which term needs defining in each, and write a definition for two of them.**

a) Compare the murder rate for countries with capital punishment with those without it.

b) The department store is a nineteenth-century creation which has no future in the twenty-first century – discuss.

c) The incidence of post-natal depression appears to be rising. What are the most effective methods of treating the condition?

6. **Select several terms from your own subject area and write extensive definitions for them.**
1. Many essay titles require the writer to examine both sides of a case, and to conclude by coming down in favour of one side. These may be called ‘discussion’, ‘for and against’ or ‘argument’ essays. For example:
   
a) School uniforms – a step forward or a step back? – discuss.
   
b) Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of state control of industry.
   
In addition, longer essays often require students to assess the information and ideas they have collected in a discussion section before the conclusion.

Discussion vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>+</th>
<th>–</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>benefit</td>
<td>drawback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advantage</td>
<td>disadvantage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a positive aspect</td>
<td>a negative feature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro (informal)</td>
<td>con (informal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plus (informal)</td>
<td>minus (informal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one minor benefit of school uniforms is . . .</td>
<td>a serious drawback to state control is . . .</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. There are two basic outlines for a discussion essay:

   i) School uniforms?
      a) advantages: reduce social inequality/encourage group identity/avoid choice
      b) disadvantages: loss of individuality/expense/unfashionable
      c) discussion: overall, benefits more valuable in most cases

   ii) School uniforms?
      a) social: emphasises group values – diminishes individual choice
      b) practical: expensive for poor families but easier to get dressed
      c) discussion: overall, benefits more valuable in most cases

3. Choose one of the titles below and write down as many pros and cons in the box as possible. Then prepare a plan using one of the outlines above.
2.6 Discussion

a) Instead of going out to work, mothers should stay at home and look after their children until they are at least 5 – discuss.

b) Fast food, which is spreading round the world and destroying national cultures, should be resisted. To what extent do you agree?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>+</th>
<th>–</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Title:
a) 
b) 
c) 
d) 

4. Presenting your case.

It is better to use impersonal phrases rather than ‘I think’:

*It is widely believed that* young children need to be with their mothers . . .

*Most people consider that* fast food is very convenient . . .

*It is generally agreed that* school uniforms develop a group identity . . .

*It is probable/possible that* fast food will become more acceptable . . .

*This evidence suggests that* most children benefit from nurseries . . .

However, if you want to present a minority point of view, you can use the following:

*It can be argued that* children benefit from a diet of hamburgers.

*It has been suggested that* school uniforms make children more rebellious.

*Some people believe that* nursery education damages children.
5. **It is important to show that you are aware of counter-arguments.**

   These are the points made by people who oppose your position. Without these your argument will appear one-sided. In a discussion you can present these first, before stating your own views.

   **Study the example and write similar sentences about working mothers and fast food using ideas from (3).**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Counter-argument</th>
<th>Your position</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Although it has been suggested that school uniforms make children more rebellious,</td>
<td>it is generally agreed that uniforms develop a group identity.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. **Before giving your own opinion, it is necessary to show that you have read the relevant sources and have studied the evidence. Opinions without evidence have little value.**

   The following paragraph discusses the environmental effects of deforestation.

   Lomberg (2001) claims that the danger of extinction of species has been exaggerated. He says that the number of species had been expected to decline dramatically within the next half century, but maintains that this is unlikely: ‘Species . . . seem more resilient than expected.’ He points out that in the eastern USA, although 98% of the original forests have been cleared, only one forest bird became extinct in the process. Against this, Brooks (2001) feels that Lomberg is ignoring the true rate of forest loss and the related extinction of species: ‘The ongoing wave of extinctions, due primarily to deforestation in the moist tropics, has been widely documented.’ It seems that Lomborg, as a statistician, is too dependent on optimistic data, and is ignoring the widespread concerns of wildlife experts.

   The paragraph has the following structure:

   - Lomborg – summary + quotation
   - Brooks – summary + quotation
   - Writer’s comment on Lomborg + opinion
2.6 Discussion

7.

85

Complete the following paragraph, which discusses air
pollution, to give an opinion.
According to Lomborg (2001), air quality is improving in
rich countries. He gives the example of London, where he
claims that the air is cleaner now than it has been since
1585, thanks to decreases in smoke and sulphur dioxide.
Brooks (2001), however, argues that Lomborg is ‘ignoring
the more recent global rise in toxic contaminants, now
found at high concentrations . . . even in the remote
reaches of the Arctic.’ It appears that . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .
...............................................
..............................................
...............................................
..............................................
...............................................
............................................

8.

List in the box as many ideas as possible for and against the
following subject:
Industrial development is destroying the quality of our
lives – discuss.
+

9.

–

Prepare a plan for this title, using one of the outlines in (2)
above.
a)
b)
c)
d)

10. Write an essay on this title, making use of phrases from (4)
above.


2.7 Examples

1. When writing essays it is often better to support statements by giving examples. Compare the following:
   a) Many plants and animals are threatened by global warming.
   b) Many plants and animals are threatened by global warming. In southern Britain, *for example*, the beech tree may become extinct within 30 years.

   The second sentence provides concrete details of a plant species, an area and a time scale to support the main statement.

2. Phrases for introducing examples include:
   
   Many departments, *for instance*/for example engineering, now offer foundation courses.

   (note use of commas)

   A few courses, *such as*/e.g. MBA, require work experience.

   Many universities, *particularly*/especially UK ones, ask overseas students for IELTS scores.

   (note the focus)

   Some subjects are heavily oversubscribed. A *case in point* is medicine.

   (for single examples)

   *Use suitable example phrases to complete the following sentences.*

   a) As the climate warms, wetland species .......... frogs may find their habitat reduced.

   b) Some animals can migrate to cooler areas. .......... are birds, which can move easily.

   c) Many slow-growing plants, trees ................., will find it difficult to move to wetter areas.

   d) Certain reptiles, ................. snakes, may benefit from drier and warmer summers.

   e) Rising sea levels may bring some advantages .............. .. expanding wetland areas.

3. *Find a suitable example for each sentence.*

   Example: Various sectors in the economy are experiencing labour shortages.

   Various sectors in the economy, *for instance* engineering, are experiencing labour shortages.
2.7 Examples

a) A number of sports have become very profitable due to the sale of television rights.

b) Certain twentieth-century inventions affected the lives of most people.

c) In recent years many women have made significant contributions to the political world.

d) Three-year guarantees are now being offered by most car makers.

e) Certain diseases are proving much harder to combat than was expected 20 years ago.

f) Many musical instruments use strings to make music.

g) Several mammals are currently in danger of extinction.

4. Read the text below and then insert suitable examples where needed.

Students who go to study abroad often experience a type of culture shock when they arrive in the new country. Customs which they took for granted in their own society may not be followed in the host country. Even everyday patterns of life may be different. When these are added to the inevitable differences which occur in every country students may at first feel confused. They may experience rapid changes of mood, or even want to return home. However, most soon make new friends and, in a relatively short period, are able to adjust to their new environment. They may even find that they prefer some aspects of their new surroundings, and forget that they are not at home for a while!
5. Another small group of phrases is used when there is only one ‘example’. This is a kind of restatement:

The world’s biggest software company, *i.e.* Microsoft, is buying a share of the cable business.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>in other words</th>
<th>namely</th>
<th>that is (to say)</th>
<th><em>i.e.</em></th>
<th><em>viz</em> (in very formal English only)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Add a suitable phrase to the following sentences, from the box below, to make them clearer.

a) His mother’s sister was a small but very remarkable woman.

b) When the liquid reached boiling point the reaction began.

c) It appears that Candlemas day was celebrated with large bonfires.

d) The company’s overheads doubled last year.

- namely 140 degrees
- *i.e.* his aunt
- in other words, the fixed costs
- that is, February 2nd
2.8 Generalisations

1. In written work generalisations are very useful because they can be used to present complex ideas or data in a simple form which is easy to understand and remember:

   - Large companies can offer better career opportunities.
   - Language is an important means of communication.

   Compare the statements on the data in the table below.

   a) 56.2% of British smokers are women.
   b) The majority of British smokers are women.

   UK smokers by gender

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Men</th>
<th>Women</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>43.8%</td>
<td>56.2%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   The first sentence is more accurate, but the second, which contains a generalisation, is easier to understand. However, using generalisations does involve a loss of precision, so the writer must judge when they can be used safely, and when it is better to give the full data.

2. There are two ways of making a generalisation:

   a) Using the plural: Computers are useful machines.
   b) Using the singular + definite article: The computer is a useful machine. (less common/more formal)

   It is better to avoid absolute phrases such as cats are cleverer than dogs. Instead use more cautious phrases such as cats tend to be cleverer than dogs or most cats are more intelligent than dogs.

Write generalisations on the following topics.

a) child/noise  Example: Children are often noisy.

b) flowers/presents ...........................................................

   ...........................................................

c) city/pollution ...........................................................

   ...........................................................

d) fresh fruit/health ...........................................................

   ...........................................................

e) television/important ....................................................

   ...........................................................

3. Read the following text and underline the generalisations.

   Li Pang is a Chinese student studying architecture in Manchester. He enjoys the style of teaching as well
as the cosmopolitan lifestyle the city provides. Many international students attend British universities. Most welcome the chance to meet classmates from all over the world, and all are pleased to have the chance to improve their English. When he goes home to Shanghai, Li Pang will have a network of international contacts to support his future career.

4. Overgeneralising

This means making statements which are too simple or inaccurate. For example, using income figures from the table below, a writer might claim:

People were much richer in 1999 than 20 years earlier.

This ignores inflation over the period. It is more accurate to say:

Average incomes in 1999 were nearly four times higher than in 1979.

**Changes in key economic indicators in the UK, 1979–1999**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Britain 1979</th>
<th>Britain 1989</th>
<th>Britain 1999</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inflation rate</td>
<td>13.4%</td>
<td>7.8%</td>
<td>3.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interest rate</td>
<td>12%</td>
<td>13.7%</td>
<td>5.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unemployment</td>
<td>4.1%</td>
<td>6.1%</td>
<td>4.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average income</td>
<td>£5,000</td>
<td>£11,700</td>
<td>£19,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average house price</td>
<td>£19,800</td>
<td>£61,500</td>
<td>£68,300</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Each of the following contain overgeneralisation. Rewrite them more accurately.

a) Between 1979 and 1999, the worst period for unemployment was 1989.

b) Inflation fell steadily for 20 years after 1979.

c) There was a dramatic rise in house prices in these two decades.

d) Interest rates peaked in 1989.
5. **Study the table below and complete the generalisations.**

Regional population in 2000 and forecasts for 2100, with % over 60 years old

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region</th>
<th>2000</th>
<th>% over 60</th>
<th>2100</th>
<th>% over 60</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. America</td>
<td>314</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>454</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W. Europe</td>
<td>456</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>392</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. Asia</td>
<td>1,367</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>1,958</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. America</td>
<td>515</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>934</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. Africa</td>
<td>173</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>333</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a) By 2100, nearly half the population of W. Europe may ....................................

b) The population of N. Africa may ..........................................................

c) S. Asia and S. America both have ......................................................

d) W. Europe is likely to experience a ......................................................

e) By 2100, all these regions may ..........................................................

6. **Read the text on ‘Dreams’ and write five generalisations using the data.**

A recent survey on dreams, completed by over 10,000 people, found that 68% of all dreams came into the ‘anxiety’ category. Being chased was the most common dream, recorded by 72%. Dreams about falling (which signify insecurity) are also very common, being recorded by 70%.

55% have dreamed about relatives and friends who have died. Many people believe that dreams can foretell the future, but only 42% have experienced this type. 28% of those surveyed have dreams about food, which seem to occur during periods of weight watching, but 23% have been pleased by dreams of finding money.

Example: Anxiety seems to be the cause of most dreams.

a) .................................................................

b) .................................................................

c) .................................................................

d) .................................................................

e) .................................................................
1. Discussing statistical data is a necessary part of much academic writing:

   Approximately 1,800 children between the ages of 5 and 12 years were randomly selected . . .

   Already 3% of the US working population (1.55 million) are employed in 70,000 centres . . .

   The earth’s atmosphere appears to be gaining 3.3 billion metric tons of carbon annually . . .

   . . . but five winters in the twentieth century were more than 2.4°C colder than average.

**Figures** and **numbers** are both used to talk about statistical data in a general sense.

The **figures** in the report need to be read critically.

**Digits** are individual numbers. Both **fractions** \(\frac{1}{2}\) and **decimals** (0.975) may be used.

   4,539 – a **four-digit** number

   £225,000 – a **six-figure** salary (a number)

   **Figure (Fig.)** 3 – Infant mortality rates in twelfth century France (a diagram)

   no final ‘s’ on hundred/thousand/million:

   Six **million** people live in the region.

   but: **Thousands** died in the last outbreak of cholera.

2. Percentages are commonly used for expressing rates of change:

   **Overseas students in the university 2000–2003**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>2000</th>
<th>2001</th>
<th>2002</th>
<th>2003</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>200</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   **Complete the following sentences about the table above with percentages.**

   a) Between 2000 and 2001, the number of overseas students increased by . . . . . . . .% 

   b) The number increased by . . . . . . . .% the following year. 

   c) Between 2000 and 2003 there was a . . . . . . . .% increase.

3. Too many statistics can make texts harder to read. In some cases, where the actual number is unimportant, words or phrases may replace numbers to simplify the text:

   **Forty-three villages** were cut off by the heavy snowstorm.
Dozens of villages were cut off by the heavy snowstorm.

The following words or phrases can be used to describe quantity.

Few students attended her lecture. (less than expected)

Several bodies have been discovered under the temple floor. (3–4)

Various attempts were made to explain the symbols. (3–6)

Dozens of politicians attended the opening ceremony. (30–60)

Scores of books are published every week. (50–100)

Rewrite the following sentences using one of the words or phrases above.

a) Only four people responded to the questionnaire.

b) They received nearly 100 applications for the post.

c) She made five or six proposals to improve the team’s performance.

d) He found over fifty factual errors in the article.

e) They made three or four drafts before writing the final report.

4. Study the following expressions, which are also used to simplify statistics.

one in three  a third/a quarter

 twice (2×)/ three times as many  the majority/minority

 a tenfold increase  50%, a percentage

to double/halve  on average/the average number

the most/least  a small/large proportion

Rewrite each sentence in a simpler way, using one of the expressions above.
a) Of the 415 people interviewed, 308 said that they supported the president.

b) Last year the number of students on the course was twenty-four, the year before it was twenty and this year it is twenty-two.

c) In 1965 a litre of petrol cost 10p, while the price is now 80p.

d) Out of eighteen students in the group, twelve were women.

e) The new type of train reduced the journey time to Madrid from 7 hours to 3 hours 20 minutes.

f) Fifteen of the students studied law, eight finance and three engineering.

g) The numbers applying to this department have risen from 350 last year to 525 this year.

5. Rewrite the following sentences to present the data in a simpler way.

a) The population of the European part of the former Soviet Union is declining rapidly. It is forecast to fall by 18 m to 220 m in 2025, and to drop to 140 m by 2100.

   Example:
   The population of the European part of the former Soviet Union is forecast to fall by nearly 10% by 2025, and by nearly 40% by the end of the century.

b) The numbers of visitors to the temples show a remarkable pattern. In 1998 just 40,000 made the journey, 83,000 in 1999 and 171,000 in 2000.
c) More than 80% of British students complete their first degree course; in Italy the figure is 35%.

d) Tap water costs 0.07p per litre while bottled water, on average, costs 50p per litre.

e) Only 8% of the women surveyed believed that they had the same rights as men. A considerable 37% complained that they had far fewer rights.

f) Life expectancy for men in the UK rose from 49 to 74 during the twentieth century.

g) The same operation cost £1,850 at a hospital in Blackburn, £2,400 in Birmingham and £2,535 in London.

h) In 1086 about 15% of England was forested, compared with only 4.8% in 1870.
It is often difficult to begin writing an essay, but, especially in exams, hesitation can waste valuable time. The first few sentences need to be general but not vague, as they set the tone for the rest of the essay. The subject can be introduced by giving some background information:

In recent years the internet has become an important tool of academic research.

There is increasing interest in the use of wind power to produce electricity.

These statements tend to consist of:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time phrase</th>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Development</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In recent years</td>
<td>the internet</td>
<td>has become an important tool of academic research.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is an increasing interest in</td>
<td>the use of wind power</td>
<td>to produce electricity.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These generalisations can be followed by further information or examples:

In recent years the internet has become an important tool of academic research. Students and teachers find it convenient, accessible and up to date.

There is increasing interest in the use of wind power to produce electricity. In north Wales, for example, one wind farm generates enough power to light 100,000 homes. Wind power is a renewable resource which does not produce carbon dioxide.

2. Write two or three introductory sentences on one of the following topics.

a) Global warming
b) The spread of Aids
c) The future of the United Nations
d) Tourism
3. It is important to begin an essay with remarks that are general but also accurate and clear.

*Decide which of the following are suitable (essay titles in brackets):*

a) (Do newspapers have a future?)

Newspapers are facing increased competition from other media such as television and the internet. Young people often prefer to get information from electronic sources, which can be updated more frequently.

b) (Is public concern about crime justified?)

Crime is increasing everywhere, and this worries many people. Nobody can agree on a solution to the problem.

c) (GM foods can feed the world – discuss.)

In the past twenty years genetically modified (GM) crops have become a source of major controversy. Both farmers and consumers are divided on questions of health and environmental safety.

d) (Is quality being sacrificed for quantity in higher education?)

It can be seen that higher education (HE) is changing throughout the world, with more students wanting to enter universities. There are many possible reasons for these changes, but the results are the same.

4. Having provided some background, the writer should next mention the main areas which will be covered in the essay.

Do newspapers have a future?

Newspapers are facing increased competition from other media such as television and the internet. Young people often prefer to get information from electronic sources, which can be updated more frequently. As a result newspaper sales are declining in many countries. Yet printed news media have certain advantages, such as cheapness and flexibility. In order to survive they are likely to concentrate more on entertainment and comment. In this essay the strengths and weaknesses of newspapers will be examined first, and these will then be compared with their rivals.
5. Study the following essay titles. Choose two and write an opening paragraph for each in no more than five minutes per paragraph.

a) Television can damage the development of children – discuss.

b) Mature students get better academic results than young students – discuss.

c) The greatest social change in the twentieth century was the movement of women out of the home and into the workforce. How true is this statement?
1. A reference is an acknowledgement that you are making use of another writer’s ideas or data in your writing:

As Donner (1997) pointed out, low inflation does not always lead to low interest rates.

There are three main reasons for giving references:

a) To avoid the charge of plagiarism, which is using another person’s ideas or research without acknowledgement.

b) The reference can give more authority to your writing, as it shows you are familiar with other research on the topic.

c) The reader can find the original source by using the reference section which will list the full publishing details of Donner’s book:


2. Decide which of the following need references.

a) A mention of facts or figures from another writer

b) An idea of your own

c) Some data you have found from your own research

d) A theory suggested by another researcher

e) A quotation from a work by any author

f) Something which is agreed to be common knowledge

3. In order to give references accurately it is important to use the following procedure:

a) When reading and note-making, keep a careful record of the details of your sources. For a long piece of writing such as a dissertation a card index is useful.

b) Find out which system of referencing is used in your subject area. You can do this by studying current textbooks and journals and checking departmental guidelines.

c) Follow one of the methods illustrated below to give the reference.

4. a) Summary of a writer’s ideas

Orwell (1940) pointed out that although Charles Dickens described eating large meals in many of his books, he never wrote about farming. He explains this contradiction in terms of Dickens’ upbringing in London, remote from the countryside.
b) **Quotation of a writer’s words.**

Orwell clearly highlighted this inconsistency in Dickens: ‘It is not merely a coincidence that Dickens never writes about agriculture and writes endlessly about food. He was a Cockney, and London is the centre of the earth in rather the same sense that the belly is the centre of the body.’ (Orwell, 1940: pp. 53–4)

c) **Mixture of summary and quotation.**

As Orwell (1940) noted, Dickens frequently described food but was uninterested in food production. He considered that this was because of the writer’s background: ‘He was a Cockney, and London is the centre of the earth.’ (pp. 53–4)

5. **Read the following extract from the same essay** (‘Charles Dickens’ in *Inside the Whale*, Orwell, G., 1940: pp. 54–5)

What he does not noticeably write about, however, is work. In Dickens’ novels anything in the nature of work happens off-stage. The only one of his heroes who has a plausible profession is David Copperfield, who is first a shorthand writer and then a novelist, like Dickens himself. With most of the others, the way they earn their living is very much in the background.

a) **Write a summary of the author’s ideas, including a suitable reference.**

b) **Introduce a quotation of the key part of the extract, again referring to the source.**

c) **Combine (a) and (b), again acknowledging the source.**

6. **Referring verbs use both the present and the past tenses.** It is probably best to use the present tense for recent sources or when you feel that the idea or data is still valid:

Rathbone (1997) demonstrates the limitations of video-conferencing.

The past tense suggests that the source is older and the ideas perhaps out of date:

Steinbeck (1965) explored a link between cancer and diet.

7. **There are three main systems of reference in use in academic writing:**

a) The system illustrated above (the Harvard) is the most common. Note the following:

*Hunter (1989) states* . . . (date of publication in brackets when referring verb is used)
Women pose less security risk *(Burke and Pollock, 1993)* (authors and date in brackets after summary)

Note that with quotations page numbers should also be given after the date. Details of the organisation of the reference section are given in (8) below.

b) Numbers in brackets are inserted in the text for each source, and at the end of the chapter or article the references are listed in number order:

A survey of Fortune 500 companies found that over 70% have problems recruiting skilled staff (1). Some analysts argue that this could be as high as 90% (2).


c) A third system uses footnotes:

More than 80% of families own or are buying their own homes.²

In this system the references are listed at the bottom of the page:


NB A full reference section is required at the end of the article or book.

8. Organising the bibliography/references

Here is the reference section of an essay written by a business student.

*Study the pattern of organisation and answer the following questions.*

a) How are the entries ordered?

b) What is the difference between the information provided for
   i) a book by one author
   ii) a chapter in an edited book
   iii) a source on the internet
   iv) an article in a journal

c) When are *italics* used?

d) How are capital letters used in titles?

e) How is a source with no given author listed?
REFERENCES


Referencing is a complex subject and students are advised to seek specialist help, e.g. from a library, when referencing less usual subjects.
1. **Restatement** is used in academic writing to expand or explain:

   a) ... individuals and employers express great creativity in arranging alternative transport, *i.e.* private buses arranged by employers or spontaneous car sharing ... 

   b) They claim that the milk contains more omega-3 fatty acids – the polyunsaturated fatty acids which are said to prevent heart disease.

   c) ... the contribution of cognitive ability to university success may be higher in physics and music than in sociology and psychology. *That is,* success in psychology and sociology may require abilities and dispositions not included in the entrance examination.

   In (a) and (b) the second part of the sentence explains what is meant by *alternative transport* and *omega-3 fatty acids.* In (c) the second sentence develops the first to make it clearer. Note that the restatements are introduced by *i.e.,* a dash (–) or that is.

2. **Add a suitable restatement from the box to the following:**

   a) Higher fares for rail passengers are likely to cause a reduction in ticket sales.

   b) Two main methods of assessment are used in UK universities.

   c) 40% of the property is owned by 1% of the population.

   \[\text{i.e. coursework and examinations.}\]

   \[\text{– the cost of living is expected to increase sharply.}\]

   \[\text{That is to say, the distribution of wealth is very unequal.}\]

   \[\text{In other words, this may lead to fewer people travelling by train.}\]

3. **Repetition and redundancy** suggest that the writer is not fully in control of the material. They give the impression that either he does not properly understand the language or he is trying to ‘pad’ the essay by repeating the same point:

   University education in Spain is cheaper than university education in the UK.

   Homelessness is a global problem in the whole world.

   Good writing aims for economy and precision:

   University education in Spain is cheaper than in the UK.

   Homelessness is a global problem.
4. **Study the following examples of repetition and redundancy, from an essay comparing education in two countries. Underline the part that can be deleted.**

   a) Every country has a unique structure for its education system, thus it differs from country to country.

   b) Similarly China, an ancient country, has expanded its higher education.

   c) There are two differences between the UK and China in terms of higher education. Firstly, the entrance system is different in the two countries.

   d) In Spain just only 40% of students can find a job.

   e) Students who graduate from secondary schools they can send application forms to many universities.

   f) Both UK universities and Chinese universities charge fees.

   g) This essay will compare HE systems in the UK and China. Firstly, there are similar assessment methods in the UK and China.

5. **The following are common causes of repetition and redundancy.**

   *Link each to one of the examples above.*

   a) Repeating the same point in different words

   b) Unnecessary word – often preposition or pronoun

   c) Irrelevant comment

   d) Repetition of phrase

6. **In the following text, remove all repetition and redundancy, rewriting where necessary.**

   **FAST FOOD**

   Currently these days, fast food is growing in popularity. Fast food is a kind of food that people they can buy or cook quickly. This essay examines the advantages of fast food and the drawbacks of fast food. First above all, the fast food is usually tasty. Most of the people who work in offices are very busy, so that they do not have time to go to their homes for lunch. But the people who work in offices can eat tasty and delicious food in McDonald’s restaurants, which are franchised in hundreds of countries. In addition, the second benefit of fast food is its cheapness. As it is produced in large quantities, this high volume means that the companies can keep costs down. As a result fast food is usually less expensive than a meal in a conventional restaurant.
2.13 Style

1. **Study the style of this paragraph and underline any examples of poor style.**

   A lot of people think that the weather is getting worse.
   They say that this has been going on for quite a long time.
   I think that they are quite right. Research has shown that
   we now get storms etc all the time.

2. **Academic writing attempts to be precise, semi-formal, impersonal and objective. This does not mean that pronouns like I and we are never used, but in general the focus is on presenting information as clearly and accurately as possible. In this way it differs from normal speech and writing, which is more personal and uses more lively idioms and phrases. Using these guidelines, the paragraph above can be analysed:**

   | A lot of people think . . . | Imprecise – how many is ‘a lot’? |
   | . . . the weather . . .      | Imprecise – ‘weather’ is short term |
   | . . . getting worse . . .    | Informal                           |
   | They say . . .               | Use of pronoun informal            |
   | . . . going on . . .         | Informal phrasal verb              |
   | . . . quite a long time.     | Imprecise – how long is this?      |
   | I think . . .                | Informal, personal phrase          |
   | Research . .                 | Vague – whose research?            |
   | . . . we now get . .         | Informal                           |
   | . . . storms etc . .         | Vague                              |
   | . . . all the time.          | Overgeneralised                    |

   The paragraph can be rewritten:

   It is widely believed that the climate is deteriorating. It is claimed that this process has been continuing for nearly 100 years. This belief appears to be supported by McKinley (1997) who shows a 55% increase in the frequency of severe winter gales since 1905.

3. **It is difficult to give rules for academic style which apply to all subject areas. When reading books and journals in your area you should note what is acceptable. You will probably meet exceptions to the points below as you read, but if you follow these guidelines you should be able to develop a suitable style of your own.**

   a) Do not use idiomatic or colloquial vocabulary: dad, guy. Use standard English: father, man.

   b) Use vocabulary accurately. There is a difference between rule and law, or currency and money, which you are expected to know.
c) Be as precise as possible when dealing with facts or figures. Avoid phrases such as *about a hundred* or *hundreds of years ago*. If it is necessary to estimate numbers use *approximately* rather than *about*.

d) Conclusions should use tentative language. Avoid absolute statements such as *education reduces crime*. Instead use cautious phrases: *may reduce crime* or *tends to reduce crime*.

e) Avoid adverbs that show your personal attitude: *luckily, remarkably, surprisingly*.

f) Do not contract verb forms: *don’t, can’t*. Use the full form: *do not, cannot*.

g) Although academic English tends to use the passive more than standard English, it should not be overused. Both have their place. Compare:

Manners (1995) claims that most companies perform worse when . . .

It is widely agreed that most companies perform worse when . . .

In the first case, the focus is on the source, in the second on what companies do.

h) Avoid the following:

*like* for introducing examples. Use *such as* or *for instance*.

*thing and combinations nothing or something*. Use *factor, issue or topic*.

*lots of*. Use *a significant/considerable number*.

*little/big*. Use *small/large*.

*get phrases such as get better/worse*. Use *improve and deteriorate*.

*good/bad are simplistic*. Use *positive/negative*, e.g. *the changes had several positive aspects*.

i) Do not use question forms such as *What were the reasons for the decline in wool exports?* Instead use statements: *There were four main reasons for the decline . . .*

j) Avoid numbering sections of your text, except in certain reports. Use conjunctions and signposting expressions to introduce new sections (*Turning to the question of taxation . . .*).

k) When writing lists, avoid using *etc. or and so on*. Insert *and* before the last item: *The forests of the twelfth century consisted of oak, ash and lime*.
l) Avoid using two-word verbs such as go on or bring up if there is a suitable synonym. Use continue or raise.

4. In the following, first underline the examples of poor style and then rewrite them in a more suitable way:
   a) Lots of people think that the railways are getting worse.
   b) Sadly, serious crime like murder is going up.
   c) You can’t always trust the numbers in that report.
   d) The second thing is that most kids in that district will become criminals.
   e) I think that there’s a big risk of more strikes, disorder etc.
   f) A few years ago they allowed women to vote.
   g) Regrettably, the inflation in Russia led to increased poverty, illness and so on.
   h) Some time soon they will find a vaccine for malaria.
   i) What were the main causes of the American Revolution?

5. Rewrite the following paragraphs in better style.
   a) These days a lot of kids are starting school early. Years ago, they began at 5, but now it’s normal to start at 4 or younger. Why is this? One thing is that mums need to get back to work. Is it good for the kids? Jenkins has studied this and says that early
schooling causes social problems like stealing, drug-taking etc. I think he’s right and we should pay mums to stay at home.

b) Why are there so many jams on the roads these days? One thing is that public transport like trains, buses, etc. is so dear. A long time ago cars cost a lot but now, unfortunately, they’ve got a lot cheaper. Another thing is that driving is a lot nicer than waiting for a bus. The trouble is that if everyone buys a car the roads get packed.
2.14 Synonyms

1. When writing it is necessary to find synonyms in order to provide variety and interest for the reader:

   General Motors is the largest motor company in the world, with total revenues amounting to 15% of the global automotive market. The giant firm employs 360,000 people internationally.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>largest company</th>
<th>giant firm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>motor</td>
<td>automotive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the world</td>
<td>global/internationally</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   a) Synonyms are not always exactly the same in meaning, but it is important not to change the register. Firm is a good synonym for company, but boss is too informal to use for manager.

   b) Synonyms are also needed when paraphrasing or note-taking to avoid plagiarism.

2. a) The accuracy of a synonym is often dependent on context. Both pupil and student could be used to identify a 15-year-old schoolgirl, but when she goes to university only student is normally used. Scholar might be a possible synonym, but it is very formal. Similarly, at university a lecturer could also be called a teacher, but in school the only possible synonym for teacher is the old-fashioned master or mistress.

   b) Many basic words, e.g. culture, economy, society or science, have no effective synonyms.

3. Some common academic synonyms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>goal</td>
<td>target</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>study</td>
<td>research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>results</td>
<td>findings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>area</td>
<td>field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authority</td>
<td>source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benefit</td>
<td>advantage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>category</td>
<td>type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>component</td>
<td>part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concept</td>
<td>idea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behaviour</td>
<td>conduct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>controversy</td>
<td>argument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feeling</td>
<td>emotion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beliefs</td>
<td>ethics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expansion</td>
<td>increase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interpretation</td>
<td>explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>issue</td>
<td>topic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>method</td>
<td>system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>option</td>
<td>possibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statistics</td>
<td>figures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>framework</td>
<td>structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trend</td>
<td>tendency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quotation</td>
<td>citation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drawback</td>
<td>disadvantage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>output</td>
<td>production</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. **Find synonyms for the words and phrases in italics.**

   a) Professor Hicks questioned the findings of the research.

   b) The statistics show a steady expansion in applications.

   c) The institute’s prediction has caused a major controversy.

   d) Cost seems to be the leading drawback to that system.

   e) They will concentrate on the first option.

   f) After the lecture she tried to clarify her concept.

   g) Three issues need to be examined.

   h) The framework can be retained but the goal needs to be altered.

   i) OPEC, the oil producers’ cartel, is to cut production to raise global prices.

   j) The trend to smaller families has speeded up in the last decade.
5. Identify the synonyms in this text by underlining them and linking them to the word they are substituting for.

Example: agency – organisation

The chairman of the UK’s food standards agency has said that a national advertising campaign is necessary to raise low levels of personal hygiene. The organisation is planning a £3m publicity programme to improve British eating habits. A survey has shown that half the population do not wash before eating, and one in five fail to wash before preparing food. There are over 6 million cases of food poisoning in this country every year, and the advertising blitz aims to cut this by 20%. This reduction, the food body believes, could be achieved by regular hand washing prior to meals.

6. In the following text, replace all the words or phrases in italics with suitable synonyms.

A leading French company has started a new programme to reduce costs. The company’s programme aims to reduce costs by $100 million. All staff have had pay cuts and work longer. The company aims to increase profits by 35% next year, and promises that pay for all staff will be increased if that happens.
2.15 Variation in Sentence Length

1. Short sentences are clear and easy to read:

   Britain is an example of the university funding problem.

   But too many short sentences are monotonous:

   Britain is an example of the university funding problem.
   Fees were introduced in 1997. Spending per student had fallen by 25% since 1990. Demand continues to grow for places on the most popular courses.

   Long sentences are more interesting but can be difficult to construct and read:

   Britain is an example of the university funding problem, since although fees were introduced in 1997 spending per student had dropped by 25% since 1990, while demand continues to grow for places on the most popular courses.

2. Effective writing normally uses a mixture of long and short sentences.

   Rewrite the following paragraph so that instead of six short sentences there are two long and two short sentences.

   Worldwide, enrolments in higher education are increasing. In developed countries over half of all young people enter college. Similar trends are seen in China and South America. This growth has put financial strain on state university systems. Many countries are asking students and parents to contribute. This leads to a debate about whether students or society benefit from tertiary education.

3. Rewrite this paragraph in fewer sentences.

   It is widely recognised that a university degree benefits the individual. A graduate can expect to find a better job with a higher salary. In the USA the average graduate will earn $1 million more in a lifetime than a non-graduate. Many governments now expect students to pay a proportion of tuition costs. It is argued that this discriminates against poorer students. Some countries give grants to students whose families have low incomes. Their education is seen to be beneficial for the nation as a whole.

4. The following sentence is too long. Divide it into shorter ones.

   China is one developing country (but not the only one) which has imposed fees on students since 1997, but the results have been surprising: enrolments, especially in the most expensive universities, have continued to rise steeply, growing 200% overall between 1997 and 2001; it seems in this case that higher fees attract rather than
discourage students, who see them as a sign of a good education, and compete more fiercely for places, leading to the result that a place at a good college can cost $8,000 per year for fees and maintenance.

5. It can be effective to either begin or end a paragraph with a short sentence:

   Imposing tuition fees can cause political difficulties in both developing and developed nations. In Scotland the introduction of fees, at the same time as maintenance grants were ended, led to a marked decline in enrolments from poorer students. Fees have now been abolished in Scotland.

   Modify the following so that it has a short first or last sentence.

   Developing countries are under the greatest financial pressure, and may also experience difficulties in introducing loan schemes for students, since the lack of private capital markets restricts the source of borrowing for governments, which are often unable to raise sufficient cheap funds, while a further restraint has been the high default rates by students unable to repay their loans.

6. Write a paragraph about university funding in your country. Use a mixture of short and long sentences.
2.16 Visual Information

1. Visual devices such as graphs and tables are convenient ways of displaying large quantities of information in a form that is quick and simple to understand.

Below are illustrations of some of the main types of visuals used in academic texts. Match the uses (a–f) to the types (1–6) and the examples (A–F) in the box below.

**Uses:**
- a) location
- b) comparison
- c) proportion
- d) function
- e) changes in time
- f) statistical display

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPES</th>
<th>USES</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1) diagram</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) table</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) map</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4) pie chart</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5) bar chart</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6) line graph</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**B. Part-time student enrolments**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Enrolments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Business</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Education</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agriculture</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**C. Origins of international students**

**D. Student admissions by subject area**

**E. Structure of the Language Centre**

**F. Position of the main library**
2. The language of change

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Adjective + noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grew</td>
<td>slightly</td>
<td>dropped</td>
<td>a slight drop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rose</td>
<td>gradually</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>a gradual fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>increased</td>
<td>steadily</td>
<td>decreased</td>
<td>a sharp decrease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>climbed</td>
<td>sharply</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Study the graph below and complete the description with phrases from the table above.

Sports centre membership a) .........................
. . . . . . in 1992, and then b) .....................
until 1995, reaching a peak of 4,900. It c) ...................
. . . . . . in 1996, but d) .........................
. . . . . . the next year. In 1998 there was a e) ..............
. . . . . . , then a peak of 6,700 in 1999, followed by a
f) ......................... in 2000.

![Sports centre membership graph](image)

Sports centre membership 1991–2000

3. Although visuals do largely speak for themselves, it is usual to help the reader interpret them by briefly commenting on their main features.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The graph</th>
<th>shows</th>
<th>the changes in the price of oil since 1990</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>map</td>
<td>illustrates</td>
<td>the main squatter housing areas in Ankara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diagram</td>
<td>displays</td>
<td>the experimental set-up of the laboratory study</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Read the following descriptions of the chart on the left. Which is better?

a) The chart shows the quantity of tea consumed by the world’s leading tea-consuming nations. India and China together consume more than half the world’s tea production, with India alone consuming about one third. Other significant tea consumers are Turkey, Russia and Britain. ‘Others’ includes the United States, Iran and Egypt.

b) The chart shows that 31% of the world’s tea is consumed by India, 23% by China and 8% by Turkey. The fourth largest consumers are Russia, Japan and Britain, with 7% each, while Pakistan consumes 5%. Other countries account for the remaining 12%.

4. Complete the following description of the chart below.

The chart shows population a) .................. in a variety of countries around the world. It b) ............... .... the extreme contrast c) .................. crowded nations such as South Korea (475 people per sq. km) and much d) ............... countries such as Canada (3 people per sq. km). Clearly, climate plays a major e) ............... in determining population density, f) ............... the least crowded nations g) ............... to have extreme climates (e.g. cold in Russia or dry in Algeria).
5. Complete the following description of the table below.

Marriage and divorce rates (per 1,000 population)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Marriage rate</th>
<th>Divorce rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Britain</td>
<td>10.7</td>
<td>3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td>4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkey</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iran</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russia</td>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Africa</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>0.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The a) shows the wide variations in marriage and divorce rates in a b) of countries. The c) rate varies from 10.7 per thousand in d) to 4.0 in South Africa, while the divorce e) ranges from 4.7 in the United States to 0.5 in Turkey and f). It appears that in the United States more than g) of all marriages end in divorce, while in Turkey the h) is less than 10%. This suggests that in countries such as the United States and Britain the high marriage rate may be a i) of the high divorce rate.

6. When referring to visual information in the text, the word figure is used for everything (such as maps, charts and graphs) except tables. Figures and tables should be numbered and given a title. Titles of tables are written above, while titles of figures are written below the data. As with other data, sources must be given for all visual information.

Table 4: Gender balance in the School of Computing 1996–2000

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Men</th>
<th>Women</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1996</td>
<td>109</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1997</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1998</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1999</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Author

If you are writing a lengthy work, such as a dissertation, you will need to provide lists of tables and figures, showing numbers, titles and page numbers, after the contents page.
7. Complete the description of the table above.
   Table 4 shows
3. Accuracy in Writing

Student Introduction

Accuracy is only one aspect of the total fabric of good writing. Few teachers will be concerned by one minor mistake with a preposition or plural in a sentence. But if a student is making mistakes in every other word there is likely to be serious confusion about meaning, so that the teacher is unable to mark the work fairly. Many of the most common error types are highlighted in unit 1.16 Rewrite and Proof-reading.

Non-native users of English tend to have problems that relate to their mother tongue. Japanese speakers, for example, find it difficult to use articles in English because these are not found in Japanese. It is unrealistic for overseas students to expect to reach 100% accuracy (and many native English speakers have similar difficulty). But they should aim to steadily improve their accuracy, in order to make their work as clear and readable as possible.

The components in Accuracy in Writing have been chosen on the basis that they regularly cause difficulty and confusion in students’ writing. These units are not intended to replace a standard grammar reference book; instead they assume a good basic knowledge of English grammar and focus on those areas of concern to the writer, rather than the speaker, of English.

As in Part 2, the units are arranged alphabetically. Students may already be aware of their weaknesses and want to focus on those, or they may seek specific assistance after getting feedback on an essay. The two tests of accuracy in the Writing Tests section can also be used to pinpoint weak areas.
1. Abbreviations are an important and expanding feature of contemporary English.

They are used for convenience, and familiarity with abbreviations makes both academic reading and writing easier. Three main types can be found:

a) **shortened words** – photo (photograph)

b) **acronyms** – UNESCO

c) **others** – NB

   a) **Shortened words** are often used without the writer being aware of the original form. *Bus* comes from *omnibus*, which is never used in modern English, but *refrigerator* is still better in written English than the informal *fridge*. *Public house* is now very formal (*pub* is acceptable), but *television* should be used instead of the idiomatic *telly*.

   b) **Acronyms** are made up of the initial letters of a name or phrase (*Aids* = *acquired immune deficiency syndrome*). They are read as words. The more official acronyms are written in capitals (*NATO*), but others use lower case (*nimby*). *NATO* stands for *North Atlantic Treaty Organisation*, which is a real body, while *nimby* stands for *not in my back yard*, which is a concept.

   c) **Other abbreviations** are read as sets of individual letters. They include names of countries, organisations and companies (*USA/BBC/IBM*), and also abbreviations which are only found in written English (*PTO* = *please turn over/Rd* = *Road*). Note that in many cases such abbreviations are widely used without most users knowing the meaning of the individual letters (e.g. *DNA/DVD/ABS*).

2. All academic subjects employ abbreviations to save time. Examples from business/economics include:

   - GDP = gross domestic product
   - PLC = public limited company
   - IMF = International Monetary Fund
   - PR = public relations
   - CEO = chief executive officer
   - WTO = World Trade Organization

3. There are many standard abbreviations found in some types of writing which have a full stop after them to show that it is a shortened form (*St. = saint*).

   Other examples are *govt.* (government), *co.* (company) and *Oct.* (October). With type (b) and (c) abbreviations there is no standard pattern for using full stops, so both *BBC* and
B.B.C. are used. There is, however, a tendency to use full stops less. The important thing is to employ a consistent style in your work.

4. **Abbreviations can be confusing.**

   *PC*, for example, can mean *Police Constable* (in Britain), *personal computer* and also *politically correct*. *CD* may stand for *compact disc* or *corps diplomatique*. *PM* could be *Prime Minister* or *post meridian*. It is useful to be aware of these potential confusions.

5. a) Certain abbreviations are found in all types of academic writing. They include:
   
   - **cf.** = compare
   - **e.g.** = for example
   - **et al.** = and others (used for giving names of multiple authors)
   - **Fig.** = figure (for labelling charts and graphs)
   - **ibid.** = in the same place (to refer to a source mentioned immediately before)
   - **i.e.** = that is
   - **K** = thousand
   - **NB** = take careful note
   - **op. cit.** = in the source mentioned previously
   - **p.a.** = yearly
   - **pp.** = pages
   - **re** = with reference to

   b) Other abbreviations are very subject specific and may be special to one article. In that case they need explaining:

   
   - . . . the developing countries with the highest per-capita dietary energy supplies (DES)
   - . . . one delegate expressed surprise that Call Centres (CCs) should . . .

6. **Explain the abbreviations in the following sentences.**

   a) The PM told MPs that the NHS needed reform.
   
   b) The failure rate among IT projects reaches 70% (*Smith et al.*, 1997).
   
   c) The world’s most populous country, i.e. China, has joined the WTO.
   
   d) **NB** CVs must be no longer than three sides of A4.
e) See the OECD’s recent report on the UK.

f) The EU hopes to achieve a standard rate of VAT.

g) The CEO intends to raise spending on R&D by 40%.

h) Fig. 4. Trade patterns on the w.w.w. (1997–2001).

i) The WHO is concerned about the spread of TB.

j) Director of PR required – salary approx. $45K.

k) GM technology is leading to advances in many fields e.g. forestry.

l) Prof. Wren claimed that the quality of M.Phil. and Ph.D. research was falling.
1. To read and write academic texts effectively students need to be familiar with the vocabulary generally used in this context. The following are examples of some of the more common items.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>analytical</td>
<td>analysis</td>
<td>analyse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creative</td>
<td>creation</td>
<td>create</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>correlative</td>
<td>correlation</td>
<td>correlate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>definitive</td>
<td>definition</td>
<td>define</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evaluative</td>
<td>evaluation</td>
<td>evaluate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generalised</td>
<td>generalisation</td>
<td>generalise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hypothetical</td>
<td>hypothesis</td>
<td>hypothesise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indicative</td>
<td>indication/indicator</td>
<td>indicate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>predictive</td>
<td>prediction/predictor</td>
<td>predict</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>responsive</td>
<td>response</td>
<td>respond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>significant</td>
<td>significance</td>
<td>signify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>synthetic</td>
<td>synthesis</td>
<td>synthesise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>variable</td>
<td>variation/variable</td>
<td>vary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Choose the most suitable word ending in each case.

   a) Arthur C. Clarke’s pred. . . . . . . . . . . of earth satellites came true in 1957.
   b) A signif. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . number of students have chosen to do that project.
   c) The rate of increase var. . . . . . . . . . . between 5% and 8% during the period.
   d) The first computer was creat. . . . . . . . . . . . . during the Second World War.
   e) Scientists frequently need to ask hypoth. . . . . . . . . . questions.
   f) Green can be made from a synth. . . . . . . . . . . of blue and yellow.
   g) The signif. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . of vitamins in diet was understood in the early twentieth century.
   h) The essays were evaluat. . . . . . . . . . . . . . in terms of content and accuracy.
i) Their research shows a strong correlation between size and longevity.

j) Her analytical approach led her to propose six types of criminals.

3. Complete each sentence with a suitable word from the table in (1).

a) First results indicated that this treatment benefits patients in 70–80% of cases.

b) Professor Strauss wrote the comprehensive work on spiders in the Balkans.

c) Most of the conclusions need to be made with care.

d) All the animals reacted to the noise by becoming agitated.

e) Over 3,500 questionnaires were distributed in terms of social class.

f) Three factors need to be considered when predicting

4. The following adjectives are best understood and learnt as opposites:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Absolute</th>
<th>Relative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abstract</td>
<td>Concrete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logical</td>
<td>Illogical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metaphorical</td>
<td>Literal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Precise</td>
<td>Vague or approximate or rough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rational</td>
<td>Irrational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relevant</td>
<td>Irrelevant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjective</td>
<td>Objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theoretical</td>
<td>Practical or empirical or pragmatic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Faith, hope and charity are all abstract concepts.

The metaphorical use of the word ‘key’ is probably more common than its literal one.

The study of statistics is highly relevant to economics.

Her study of women’s social position was criticised for being too subjective.

In Europe, empirical research began in the sixteenth century.
5. Complete each sentence with a suitable adjective from the table in (4).

a) The .................. number killed in the war will never be known.

b) His .................. approach led him to ignore some inconvenient facts.

c) Many ............... ideas, such as astrology, are still popular.

d) It is sufficient to give .................. figures for national populations.

e) Only after 200 years could an .................. biography be written.

f) Although he was a qualified dentist it was ............... to his new job as a priest.

g) Cathedrals are a .................. example of religious faith.
3.3 Adverbs

1. Adverbs are used in academic texts in a variety of ways. Among the most important are:
   a) to provide more detail, with verbs and adjectives:
      
      *Reasonably* good data are available for only . . .
      . . . decomposition *eventually* ceases in modern landfills . . .

   b) individually, often at the beginning of sentences, to introduce new points:
      
      *Currently*, the earth’s atmosphere appears to be . . .
      *Alternatively*, the use of non-conventional renewable energies . . .
      (These can be similar in function to conjunctions.)

2. Adverbs linked to verbs and adjectives usually fall into three groups.
   a) Time (when?)
      
      *previously* published
      *retrospectively* examined

   b) Degree (how much?)
      
      declined *considerably*
      contribute *substantially*

   c) Manner (in what way?)
      
      *medically* complicated
      *remotely* located

3. Adverbs used individually need to be employed with care. It is dangerous to overuse them, since they are often like the author’s ‘voice’, commenting on the topic. As the academic writer aims to be objective, adverbs like *fortunately* or *remarkably* may be unsuitable. However, other, less subjective adverbs can be useful for opening paragraphs or linking ideas. The following examples are often followed by a comma.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Relating ideas</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>recently</td>
<td>clearly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>increasingly</td>
<td>obviously</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>originally</td>
<td>(not) surprisingly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>presently</td>
<td>alternatively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>currently</td>
<td>similarly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traditionally</td>
<td>(more) importantly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. **Insert a suitable adverb from the table into the gaps in the sentences.**

   a) Most houses do not have electricity. ................, then, there is little chance of improving living standards.

   b) ................, the internet was mainly used for academic purposes.

   c) Some courses are assessed purely by exams. ................, coursework may be employed.

   d) ................, there has been growing concern about financing the health service.

   e) Many birds use bright colours to attract a mate. ............ ......, flowers advertise their position to fertilising insects.

   f) ................, the development should be acceptable environmentally.

5. **The following adverbs are used to describe changes in the rate of something:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>small</th>
<th>medium</th>
<th>large</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gradually</td>
<td>substantially</td>
<td>quickly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slightly</td>
<td>significantly</td>
<td>sharply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marginally</td>
<td>steadily</td>
<td>dramatically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slowly</td>
<td>considerably</td>
<td>rapidly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   Note that certain adverbs are mainly used to describe changes in time:

   Production in Russia rose **slowly** from 1920 to 1929. (a little every year)

   Others are commonly used to show changes in amount:

   The birth rate increased **slightly** after the revolution. (by a small quantity)

   The most suitable adverb depends on what is being discussed. For example,

   Over the period, the inflation rate fell **significantly** from 6% to 4.5%.

   In 2004, sales dropped **slightly**, by 1.5%.

6. **Use a suitable adverb to complete the following sentences.**

   a) Last year inflation increased ................ from 2% to 2.3%.

   b) Life expectancy has risen ................ in the last 20 years, by about 15%. 
c) The price was reduced ................., so that a £12 book was offered for £6.

d) Sales rose ................ while he was chairman, averaging 14% per year.

e) The numbers of people voting has declined .............., from 80% to 65%.

f) The crime rate climbed .............. in the early 1990s, by 20–25% a year.

g) In the last four years unemployment has fallen ............, from 5% to 2.5%.

h) In the first two years of the war the suicide rate dropped .............., by over 30% each year.
3.4 Articles

1. Unless they are uncountable, all nouns need an article when used in the singular. The article can be either *a/an* or *the*. Compare:
   a) Research is an important activity in universities.
   b) *The* research begun by Dr Mathews was continued by Professor Brankovic.
   c) *A* survey was conducted among 200 patients in the clinic.
   In (a) *research*, which is usually uncountable, is being used in a general sense.
   In (b) a specific piece of research is identified.
   In (c) the survey is being mentioned for the first time.

2. The rules for using *the* (the definite article) are quite complex. Decide why it is used, or not, in the following examples.
   a) The most famous fictional detective is Sherlock Holmes.
   b) The USA was founded in the eighteenth century.
   c) The government changed its attitude in the 1980s.
   d) In many companies, the knowledge of most employees is a wasted resource.
   e) The moon orbits the earth every 28 days.
   f) The south is characterised by poverty and emigration.
   g) Charles Dickens, the English novelist, died in 1870.
   h) The River Trent runs through the middle of England.
   i) The World Health Organization was founded in 1948.

3. In general, *the* is used with:
   a) superlatives (*most famous*)
   b) time periods (*eighteenth century/1980s*)
   c) unique things (*government/moon/earth*)
   d) specified things (*knowledge of most employees*)
   e) regions and rivers (*south/River Trent*)
   f) very well-known people and things (*English novelist*)
   g) institutions and bodies (*World Health Organization*)
   h) positions (*middle*)
   It is *not* used with:
3.4 Articles

i) names of countries, except for the UK, the USA and a few others

j) abstract nouns (poverty)

k) companies/bodies named after people/places, e.g. Sainsbury’s, Sheffield University

4. In the following sentences, decide if the words underlined are specific or not. Insert the if specific.

Example:

............. inflation was the greatest problem for ........ Brazilian government.

Inflation was the greatest problem for the Brazilian government.

a) ............ engineering is the main industry in this region.

b) ............ moons of Jupiter were discovered in ........ eighteenth century.

c) ............ global warming is partly caused by ........ fossil fuels.

d) ............ Russian revolution was largely a result of ........ First World War.

e) ............ fraud is costing ........ banking industry millions of pounds a year.

f) ............ drought may have been a factor in ........ decline of the Maya empire.

g) ............ forests of Scandinavia produce most of ........ world’s paper.

h) ............ French police have issued a warning about ........ terrorist groups.

i) ............ computer crime has grown by 200% in ........ last decade.

j) ............ Japanese emperor lives in ........ centre of Tokyo.

k) Already 3% of ........ US working population are employed in ........ call centres.

l) ............ purpose of this paper is to evaluate ........ intelligence tests.

m) Picasso, ........ Spanish painter, was born in ........ nineteenth century.

n) ............ best definition is often ........ simplest.
5. Complete the following text by inserting a/an/the (or nothing) in each gap.

THE ORIGINS OF @

Giorio Stabile, a) . . . . . professor of b) . . . . . history at La Sapienza university in Rome, has demonstrated that c) . . . . . @ sign, now used in email addresses, was actually invented 500 years ago. Professor Stabile has shown that d) . . . . . @, now e) . . . . . symbol of f) . . . . . internet, was first used by Italian merchants during g) . . . . . sixteenth century.

He claims that it originally represented h) . . . . . unit of volume, based on i) . . . . . large jars used to carry liquids in j) . . . . . ancient Mediterranean world. He has found k) . . . . . first example of its use in l) . . . . . letter written in 1546 by m) . . . . . merchant from Florence. n) . . . . . letter, which was sent to Rome, announces o) . . . . . arrival in p) . . . . . Spain of ships carrying gold from South America.

q) . . . . . professor argues that r) . . . . . @ sign derives from s) . . . . . special script used by these merchants, which was developed in t) . . . . . sixteenth century. According to him, u) . . . . . loop around v) . . . . . ‘a’ is typical of that style. He found w) . . . . . evidence while researching x) . . . . . visual history of y) . . . . . twentieth century.
3.5 Caution

1. A cautious style is necessary in many areas of academic writing:

   Primary products . . . usually have low supply and demand elasticities . . .

   . . . multiple factors may lead to a psychiatric consultation

   . . . some parameters might depend on the degree of water content in the sand

   . . . women tend to value privacy more than men

   . . . other studies suggest that some permanent modal shift will occur

   Areas where caution is particularly important include:

   a) outlining a hypothesis which needs to be tested (e.g. in an introduction)

   b) discussing the results of a study, which may not be conclusive

   c) commenting on the work of other writers

2. Caution is needed to avoid making statements which are too simplistic:

   Poor education leads to crime.

   Such statements are rarely completely true. There is usually an exception which needs to be considered. Caution can be shown in several ways:

   (modal verb) Poor education can lead to crime.

   (adverb) Poor education frequently leads to crime.

   (verb/phrase) Poor education tends to lead to crime.

   There is a tendency for poor education to lead to crime.

   Complete the box below with more examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modals</th>
<th>Adverbs</th>
<th>Verb/phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>frequently</td>
<td>tends to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>there is a tendency</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. **Rewrite the following sentences in a more cautious way.**
   a) Private companies are more efficient than state-owned businesses.
   b) Computer manuals are difficult to understand.
   c) Older students perform better at university than younger ones.
   d) Exploring space is a waste of valuable resources.
   e) English pronunciation is confusing.
   f) Global warming will cause the sea level to rise.
   g) Science students work harder than those studying humanities.
   h) Concrete is the best material for building bridges.

4. **Another way to express caution is to use quite, rather or fairly before an adjective.**
   a) a *fairly* accurate summary
   b) *quite* a significant correlation
   c) a *rather* inconvenient location

   NB *Quite* is often used before the article. It is generally used positively, while *rather* tends to be used negatively.

   **Insert quite/rather/fairly in the following to emphasise caution.**
   a) Charles was an insignificant king who reigned for only 3 years.
   b) The survey was a comprehensive study of student opinion.
   c) His second book had a hostile reception.
   d) The latest type of arthritis drugs are expensive.
   e) The first-year students were fascinated by her lectures.
5. When referring to sources, the verb used indicates the degree of caution appropriate. Compare:

Widmerpool (1999) states that junior doctors work longer than . . . (positive)

Le Bas (1983) suggests that more training would result in . . . (cautious)

Other verbs which imply tentative or cautious findings are:

think/consider/hypothesise/believe/claim/presume

6. *Rewrite the following text in more cautious language.*

A team of American scientists have found a way to reverse the ageing process. They fed diet supplements, found in health food shops, to elderly rats, which were then tested for memory and stamina. The animals displayed more active behaviour after taking the supplements, and their memory improved. In addition, their appearance became more youthful and their appetite increased.

The researchers say that this experiment is a clear indication of how the problems of old age can be overcome. They state that in a few years’ time everyone will be able to look forward to a long and active retirement.
1. **Study the following sentences.**

   - The storm *affected* large parts of northern France.
   - An immediate *effect* of the price rise was a fall in demand.

   *Affect* and *effect* are different words which are often confused because they have similar spellings and meanings. However, *affect* is a verb, while *effect* is commonly used as a noun.

**Study the differences between other similar confusing pairs (most common use in brackets).**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>accept (verb)/except (prep.)</th>
<th>It is difficult to accept their findings. The report is finished except for the conclusion.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>close (adj.)/close (verb)</td>
<td>The town was built close to the gold mines. The library will be closed all weekend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compliment (noun/verb)/complement (verb)</td>
<td>Her colleagues complimented her on her presentation. His latest book complements his previous research on neurotic behaviour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>economic (adj.)/economical (adj.)</td>
<td>Sharing a car to work was an economical move. Inflation was one economic result of the war.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>its (pronoun)/it’s (pronoun + verb)</td>
<td>It’s widely agreed that smoking is dangerous. The car’s advanced design was its most distinct feature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose (verb)/loose (adj.)</td>
<td>No general ever plans to lose a battle. He stressed the loose connection between religion and psychology.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past (noun/adj./prep.)/passed (verb)</td>
<td>Demand has been growing for the past five years. The resolution was passed by 12 votes to 7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>principal (adj./noun)/principle (noun)</td>
<td>Zurich is the principal city of Switzerland. All economists recognise the principle of supply and demand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rise (verb – past tense rose)/raise (verb – past tense raised)</td>
<td>The population of London rose by 35% in the century. The university raised its fees by 10% last year.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.6 Confusing Pairs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3.6 Confusing Pairs</th>
<th>137</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### 3.6 Confusing Pairs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Confusing Pairs</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quite (adv.)/quiet (noun/adj.)</td>
<td>It was quite difficult to explain her hypothesis. Everyone needs a quiet environment to work effectively.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>site (noun)/sight (noun)</td>
<td>The site of the battle is now covered by an airport. His sight began to weaken when he was in his eighties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tend to (verb)/trend (noun)</td>
<td>Young children tend to enjoy making a noise. In many countries there is a trend towards smaller families.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2. Choose the correct word in each sentence.

- a) His conclusions were **quite**/quiet interesting, but controversial.
- b) Millions of people are attempting to **lose**/loose weight.
- c) Sunspots have been known to **affect**/effect radio communication.
- d) Professor Poledna received their **compliments**/complements politely.
- e) The ancient symbol depicted a snake eating **it’s**/its tail.
- f) Both social and **economical**/economic criteria need to be examined.
- g) It took many years for some of Freud’s theories to be **accepted**/excepted.

### 3. Some of the following contain mistakes. Find and correct them.

- a) The past has been described as like ‘a foreign country.’
- b) One of the most famous sights in Paris is the Eiffel Tower.
- c) Re-using old envelopes was one economic suggestion.
- d) He was a man of strict principals, who never borrowed any money.
- e) Accept for two students they all spoke Arabic.
- f) The taste of lemon complemented the rich flavour of the fish.
- g) Only seven out of a class of sixteen passed the exam.
- h) Most oil companies plan to rise prices in the new year.
3.7 Conjunctions

1. Conjunctions are words and phrases such as *and* or *but* which join parts of a sentence together. There are six main types of conjunctions:

a) **addition**  
   *Furthermore*, child mortality rates must be examined.

b) **result**  
   Prices are rising worldwide, *thus* encouraging investment.

c) **reason**  
   *Due to* the strike today’s classes are cancelled.

d) **time**  
   *Thirdly*, the role of the architect will be reviewed.

e) **example**  
   Various writers have examined the issue, *for instance* Van Exel (2000).

f) **opposition**  
   *Although* this study concentrates mainly on peak-time travellers . . .

2. Decide which type (a–f) the following sentences belong to.

a) Before the Roman invasion the economy was mainly agricultural. (  )

b) The results were checked because they were so surprising. (  )

c) Estimates suggest that the effects will continue, but at a more moderate rate. (  )

d) Some Asian economies, for example Indonesia, are growing more slowly. (  )

e) Moreover, travel information is very important for route planning. (  )

f) The findings were ambiguous, therefore the study was revised. (  )

g) The deadline is next week, so speed is vital. (  )

h) There is a serious problem in the district, namely unemployment. (  )

3. Conjunctions act as signposts for the reader, giving the main meaning of the phrase they introduce:

   - **Addition**: +
   - **Result**: ⇧
   - **Reason**: ⇧
   - **Time**: ⇧
   - **Example**: ⇧
   - **Opposition**: ⊗
Study the use of conjunctions in signposting the following paragraph.

The Brazilian coast was hit by a strange storm in March 2004. It moved inland at speeds of over 150 k.p.h. and caused considerable damage. Named Catarina, this storm behaved like a hurricane but could not have been one. This was because hurricanes do not occur in the South Atlantic. However, Catarina was not an ordinary tropical storm since it had a hurricane ‘eye’ and was of hurricane strength. After checking their records, meteorologists decided that Catarina really was a hurricane, the first ever recorded in the region. Their research suggests that sea temperatures are rising rapidly, thereby developing enough energy to cause hurricanes.

4. Underline the conjunctions in the following text and draw the ‘signposts’.

Many Asian students chose the college because of its excellent reputation. Kim, for example, liked the spacious campus. He is self-funded and pays a tuition fee of £9,500 per year. But many students find language a barrier, so that they only socialise with other overseas students, while others complain about the college facilities. Firstly, accommodation is said to be noisy and inconvenient, and furthermore the library is seen as poorly equipped.

5. Complete the table to show as many examples of conjunctions as possible.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Addition</th>
<th>Result</th>
<th>Reason</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Opposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>furthermore</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Insert a suitable conjunction in each gap.

a) the course was voluntary, most students attended.
b) The longest day of the year, June 21st, was a time of festivity.

c) checking the equipment the experiment was repeated.

d) most people use the train, a minority walk or cycle.

e) Brick is a thermally efficient building material. It is, cheap.

f) Demand has increased for summer courses, extra ones are offered this year.

g) Many writers, Chekhov, have been doctors.

h) the increase in residence fees more students are moving out.

i) The first stage was to write a clear questionnaire 200 people were interviewed.

j) Mustafa was in the lecture his car was being repaired.

7. Complete the following biography by inserting suitable conjunctions.

THE BEATLES

The group which became the Beatles was formed in 1960 by John Lennon and Paul McCartney, with George Harrison and Ringo Starr joining later. a) playing in small clubs for 2 years their first record, Love Me Do, was released. She Loves You, in 1963, broke all previous sales records in Britain. b) their simplicity, the early Beatles songs c) . . . . . . . . . . . Yesterday and Paperback Writer are still seen as masterpieces of musical genius. d) , the unusual haircuts and clothes worn by the Beatles fitted well with the style of the mid-1960s. The popularity of the group soon spread to the USA and e) around the world, f) the media invented the term ’Beatlemania’ to describe the excitement that was part of their tours. g) their popularity the group were awarded the MBE by the Queen in 1965, h) this caused anger among some of the older holders of this award.

In 1966 the Beatles stopped live performances, i) . . . . . . their music was becoming too complex to produce on stage. A year later Sgt. Pepper’s Lonely Hearts Club Band was released, j) . . . . . . . was immediately recognised as one of the most influential works in the
history of popular music. k) . . . . . . . . . . , the pressures of fame were beginning to affect all the members of the band, l) . . . . . . . . . . that they found it harder to work together. They played together for the last time in 1969 and m) . . . . . . . . . . split up in 1970.

8. Conjunctions of opposition

Note the position of the conjunctions in the following examples.

The economy is strong, but/yet there are frequent strikes.

Although/while there are frequent strikes, the economy is strong.

In spite of/ despite the frequent strikes, the economy is strong.

There are frequent strikes. However/nevertheless, the economy is strong.

Write two sentences in each case.

Example: The equipment was expensive/unreliable.

The equipment was expensive but unreliable.

Although the equipment was expensive it was unreliable.

a) The government claimed that inflation was falling. The opposition said it was rising.

   i)  

   ii) 

b) This department must reduce expenditure. It needs to install new computers.

   i)  

   ii) 

9. Finish the sentences in a suitable way.

a) In contrast to America, where gun ownership is common,

b) Despite leaving school at the age of 14

c) The majority displayed a positive attitude to the proposal, but

d) While the tutor insisted that the essay was easy,

e) Although the spring was cold and dry
3.8 Nationality Language

1. Most nationalities have a regular pattern of nouns and adjectives.

   - **Germany** is a leading industrial economy. (country)
   - The **German** capital is Berlin. (adjective)
   - **German** is spoken by over 100 million. (language)
   - **Germans/The Germans** like wine. (people)

   (Most national adjectives end in -an/-ian/-ish/-ch/-ese/-i.)

2. Some nationalities are less regular.

   - **Holland/The Netherlands** is located between Belgium and Germany.
   - The **Dutch** capital is The Hague.
   - **Dutch** is related to German.
   - **Dutch people** often speak English well.

3. Write similar sentences to those above about two of the countries below:

   - France
   - Japan
   - Egypt
   - India
   - Ireland
   - Mexico

   i) i)  
   ii) ii)  
   iii) iii)  
   iv) iv)

4. The definite article is used with a few countries:

   - The United Arab Emirates  
   - The United States  
   - The United Kingdom  
   - The Czech Republic  

   With national adjectives ending in -an/-ian it is possible to say:

   - **Italians/The Italians/Italian people** have enjoyed opera for over 200 years.

---

3.4 Articles
With other endings the first form is not possible:

*The Japanese/Japanese people* like watching sumo wrestling.

NB *England* is not a political unit. Although it is possible to use *English people/English food* the nationality is *British*. The country’s name is *Britain* or the *United Kingdom*.

5. **Complete the spaces in the following sentences with one word.**

   a) Beijing is the ............... capital.

   b) The rouble is the ............... currency.

   c) The largest city in ............... is Sydney.

   d) Many ............... people enjoy going to bullfights.

   e) Bill Clinton was the ............... president.

   f) ............... are the only South Americans who speak Portuguese.

   g) The ............... capital is Baghdad.

   h) ............... speak Spanish and make fine cigars.

6. **Write sentences about some of the people in the box, giving their nationality.**

   | Ronaldo | Bill Gates | Pablo Picasso | Bob Marley |
   | Kofi Annan | Mao Tse-tung | Akio Morita | Beethoven |
   | Nelson Mandela | Josep Stalin | Mahatma Gandhi | Yasser Arafat |

   Example: Ronaldo is a Brazilian footballer/Ronaldo comes from Brazil.

   a) 

   b) 

   c) 

   d) 

   e) 

   f) 

   g) 

   h)
1. Compare these sentences:

   The **efficiency** of the machine depends on the **precision** of its construction.

   Precise construction results in an **efficient** machine.

   The first sentence uses the nouns *efficiency* and *precision*. The second uses adjectives: *precise* and *efficient*. Although the meaning is similar the first sentence is more formal. Effective academic writing requires accurate use of both, which can be easily confused.

2. **Underline and correct the mistakes in the following:**

   a) Some areas of the capital are not safety.

   b) Various culture patterns in French society need to be considered.

   c) The deep of the lake is calculated at 550 metres.

   d) A health diet includes fresh fruit and vegetables.

3. **Complete the gaps in the table below.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>height</td>
<td>reliability</td>
<td>heat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>strong</td>
<td>confident</td>
<td>true</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>width</td>
<td>probability</td>
<td>necessity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>long</td>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>relevant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. **Insert a suitable noun or adjective from the table in each sentence.**

   a) The building’s .................. is due to its massive steel frame.

   b) The .................. of the matter may never be known since all the records are lost.

   c) There is a strong .................. that coffee prices will fall next year.

   d) In some places the River Zambesi is more than 3 kilometres .................

   e) The results are so surprising it will be .................. to repeat the experiment.

   f) It is not easy to see the .................. of art history to engineering.

   g) Regularly backing up computer files reduces the ............. ............. of losing vital work.

   h) Revising for exams is a tedious ...............

3.2 Academic Vocabulary
3.6 Confusing Pairs
i) This data appears to be .............. and should not be trusted.

j) .............. in the banking system was destroyed by years of inflation.

5. **Underline the adjective(s) in each sentence and write the related noun(s) in brackets.**

   Example:
   Few patients are likely to suffer side-effects from the drug. (likelihood)

   a) Various methods of dealing with the spread of malaria were suggested. (    )
   
b) Dr Lee adopted an analytical approach to the inquiry. (    )
   
c) Antibiotics were not available in the first half of the twentieth century. (    )
   
d) Her major contribution to the research was her study of folklore in Spain. (    )
   
e) The precise number of people affected by the earthquake is unknown. (    ) (    )
   
f) Some progress was made in the theoretical area. (    )
   
g) A frequent complaint is that too much work is expected in the first semester. (    )
   
h) We took a more critical approach to irrigation. (    )
   
i) The Department of Social Policy is offering three courses this year. (    )
   
j) Finally, the practical implications of my findings will be examined. (    )

6. **Complete the gaps in the table below.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>approximation</td>
<td>approximate</td>
<td>particular</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superiority</td>
<td>reason</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>politics</td>
<td>strategic</td>
<td>synthetic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exterior</td>
<td>industrial</td>
<td>cultural</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>economy</td>
<td>average</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. **Complete the sentences with nouns or adjectives from the table above.**

   a) The .............. consequences of the war were inflation and unemployment.
b) 365.25 days is an \ldots of the length of the solar year.

c) One \ldots of British weather is that it is very changeable.

d) All \ldots doors are fitted with security systems.

e) They attempted to make a \ldots of all the different proposals.

f) The \ldots length of time patients have to wait is 34.6 weeks.

g) The traditional idea that the sun went round the earth was \ldots, but wrong.

h) Ancient Japanese \ldots was highly developed in areas such as poetry and ceramics.
3.10 Nouns – Countable and Uncountable

1. Most nouns in English are countable, but the following are generally uncountable, i.e. they are not usually used with numbers or the plural ‘-s’.

- accommodation
- information
- scenery
- advice
- knowledge
- staff
- behaviour
- money
- traffic
- commerce
- news
- travel
- data
- permission
- trouble
- education
- progress
- vocabulary
- equipment
- research
- weather
- furniture
- rubbish
- work

2. Another group of uncountable nouns is used for materials:

- wood/rubber/iron/coffee/paper/water/oil/stone

Little wood is used in the construction of motor vehicles.
Huge amounts of paper are used to produce magazines.
Many of these nouns can be used as countable nouns with a rather different meaning:
Over twenty daily papers are published in Delhi.
Most woods are home to a wide variety of birds.

3. The most difficult group can be used as either countable or uncountable nouns, often with quite different meanings (further examples: business/capital/experience).

- She developed an interest in bio-genetics.
- The bank is paying 4% interest on 6-month deposits.
- Other nouns with a similar pattern are used for general concepts (love/fear/hope).
- Most people feel that life is too short. (in general)
- Nearly twenty lives were lost in the mining accident. (in particular)

4. Note the importance of the type of noun in the following structures:

QUESTIONS

How much accommodation (U) is available for rent?
How many rooms (C) are vacant next month?
NEGATIVES

Not much/Little equipment (U) was needed for the experiment.
Not many/Few machines (C) were functioning in the IT room.

Complete the following sentences to show the differences in meaning.

a) Three years’ work experience .............................................

b) She had some exciting experiences while. ...........................

c) Most small businesses have .............................................

d) In many countries it is normal to discuss business .............

e) A number of capitals such as Washington and Canberra are..........

f) Huge amounts of capital are needed .................................

g) Two world wars in 30 years caused .................................

h) War is a feature of ...........................................................

i) .........................................................................................

j) Death is ...........................................................................

k) New medicines are being developed .................................

l) Studying medicine at university can be ...............................

5. In the following sentences, choose the correct alternative.

a) Little/few news reached the prisoners in the castle.

b) He established three successful businesses/business in 1995.

c) Substantial experiences/experience of report writing are/is required.

d) It has often been claimed that travel broadens/travels broaden the mind.

e) Paper was/papers were very expensive in the twelfth century.

f) How much advice/many advices were they given before coming to Britain?
g) She had *little interest/few interests* outside her work.

h) The insurance policy excludes the effects of civil *war/wars*.

i) *Irons were/iron was* first powered by electricity in the twentieth century.

j) They studied the *behaviour/behaviours* of three groups of lions over 2 years.

6. *Complete the gaps in the following paragraph with much/many/little/few.*

Very a) . . . . . . . . . . . . data is available to students of housing of the sixth to ninth centuries AD. No complete examples survive, and researchers are not certain how b) . . . . . . . . . . . . information can be taken from the literature. It is not clear how c) . . . . . . . . . . people lived in each house, and in the d) . . . . . . . . . . sites that have been investigated (only four in the whole country) e) . . . . . . . . . . progress has been made towards finding a standard floor plan.
1. A range of ‘umbrella’ nouns is used to express basic ideas in academic writing:

   Molecular biology is an interesting new **field**.

   The **concept** of class was first discussed in the eighteenth century.

   Freud developed a new **approach** in his second book.

   They are rather formal and need to be used accurately.

Read the following and find a synonym for each word in italics from the box below.

a) The second **factor** in the accident was the cold weather.

b) Harvey’s **concept** of the circulation of the blood was first presented in 1628.

c) Snow is a rare **phenomenon** in Rome.

d) The President’s resignation gave a new **aspect** to the national crisis.

e) A barcode scanner is a **device** used at supermarket checkouts.

f) Her **field** is the history of life insurance.

g) The National Institute for Clinical Excellence is a **body** created to assess medical drugs.

h) Mendel’s work on genetics provided new **perspectives** for biologists.

i) Their main **concern** is to prevent pollution in rivers and lakes.

j) Their new **system** allows errors to be detected in 12 seconds.

k) The survey identified three **categories** of bus user.

l) The most serious **issue** raised at the meeting was student accommodation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>process</th>
<th>organisation</th>
<th>machine</th>
<th>theory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>event</td>
<td>types</td>
<td>consideration</td>
<td>area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>views</td>
<td>feature</td>
<td>cause</td>
<td>problem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. *Insert a suitable umbrella noun in the following sentences.*
   a) The Students’ Union is a . . . . . . . . . . designed to promote students’ interests.
   b) Rainbows are a common natural . . . . . . . . . .
   c) Completion of the new building was delayed by safety . . . . . . . . . . . . . .
   d) Environmental law is an increasingly popular . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .
   e) In 1956 he patented a . . . . . . . . . . for measuring the height of waves.
   f) Jung’s . . . . . . . . . . . . . . of the ‘anima’ has been strongly criticised.
   g) His paper examined three . . . . . . . . . . of the problem of tissue rejection.
   h) Three . . . . . . . . . . . . . . of father were identified; ‘involved’, ‘semi-detached’ and ‘disengaged’.
   i) The main . . . . . . . . . . . . . . discussed was lack of support from tutors.
   j) One . . . . . . . . . . . . . . in the collapse of the business was the rise in oil prices.
   k) The discovery of DNA created fresh . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . in medicine.

3. *Keep a record of other umbrella nouns you meet.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Umbrella noun</th>
<th>Synonym</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.12 Prefixes and Suffixes

1. *Automatically* and *uncontrollable* are examples of words containing prefixes and suffixes. Words like these are much easier to understand if you know how prefixes and suffixes affect word meaning.

   *Prefixes* change or give the meaning.

   *Suffixes* show the meaning or the word class.

   The machine started *automatically*.

   The class of young boys was *uncontrollable*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prefix</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Suffix</th>
<th>Word class/meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>auto-</td>
<td>by itself</td>
<td>-ally</td>
<td>adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>un-</td>
<td>negative</td>
<td>-able</td>
<td>ability</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Prefixes
   a) Negative prefixes, *un-, in-, mis-*, and *dis-* often give adjectives and verbs a negative meaning: *unclear, insane, mishear, disagree*
   b) A wide variety of prefixes define meaning, e.g. *pre-* usually means ‘before’, hence *prefer, prehistory* and, of course, *prefix*!

3. Common prefixes of meaning
   *Find the meaning(s) of each prefix. (NB Some prefixes have more than one meaning.)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prefix</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>The plane flew on <em>autopilot</em> for six hours.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>auto</td>
<td>autopilot</td>
<td>The <em>co-ordinator</em> invited them to a meeting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>co</td>
<td>co-ordinator</td>
<td>He met his <em>ex-girlfriend</em> at the station.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex</td>
<td>exclusive</td>
<td>It is difficult to join such an <em>exclusive</em> club.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>micro</td>
<td>microscope</td>
<td>She studied the tiny animals with a <em>microscope</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multi</td>
<td>multinational</td>
<td>Ford is a <em>multinational</em> motor company.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over</td>
<td>oversleep</td>
<td>After <em>oversleeping</em> twice she got an alarm clock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post</td>
<td>postpone</td>
<td>The meeting is <em>postponed</em> to next Monday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>re</td>
<td>return</td>
<td><em>Return</em> the letter to the sender.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
sub subtitle Chinese films have *subtitles* in Britain.

under undergraduate Most *undergraduate* courses last 3 years.

under undercook *Undercooked* meat can be a health hazard.

4. **Prefixes allow new words to be created. Suggest possible meanings for the recently developed words in italics.**

a) Criminal activity seems to be very common among the *underclass*.

b) The passengers found the jet was *overbooked* and had to wait for the next flight.

c) The *microclimate* in my garden means that I can grow early tomatoes.

d) It is claimed that computers have created a *post-industrial* economy.

e) Most film stars have *ex-directory* phone numbers.

f) The class was *underwhelmed* by the quality of the lecture.

5. **Suffixes**

a) Some suffixes like *-ion, -ive or -ly* help the reader find the word class, e.g. noun, verb or adjective.

b) Other suffixes add to meaning, e.g. *-ful or -less* after an adjective have a positive or negative effect (thoughtful/thoughtless).

6. **Word class suffixes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th>-er often indicates a person: teacher, gardener</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ee can show the person who is the subject: employee, trainee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ism and -ist are used with belief systems and their supporters: socialism/socialist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ness converts an adjective into a noun: sad/sadness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ion changes a verb to a noun: convert/conversion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives</th>
<th>-ive: effective, constructive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-al: commercial, agricultural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ous: precious, serious</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>-ise/-ize to form verbs from adjectives: private/privatise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverbs</th>
<th>-ly: most (but not all) adverbs have this suffix: happily</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
7. Meaning suffixes

A few suffixes contribute to the meaning of the word:

-able has the meaning of ‘ability’: a watchable film, changeable weather

-wards means ‘in the direction of’: the ship sailed northwards

-ful and -less: hopeful news, a leaderless army

8. Give the word class and suggest possible meanings for:

a) cancellation  
f) unpredictable

b) coincidental  
g) saleable

c) uncooperatively  
h) interviewee

d) evolutionary  
i) surrealism

e) protester  
j) symbolically

9. Study each sentence and find the meanings of the words in italics.

a) The film is a French–Italian co-production made by a subsidiary company.

b) When the car crashed she screamed involuntarily but was unharmed.

c) Using rechargeable batteries has undoubted benefits for the environment.

d) The unavailability of the product is due to the exceptional weather.

e) There is a theoretical possibility of the cloth disintegrating.
1. **Underline the prepositions in the following text.**

The purpose of this paper is to examine the development of the textile industry in Britain over the period 1750–1850. This clearly contributed to the nation’s industrialisation, and was valuable for stimulating exports. In conclusion, the paper sets out to demonstrate the relationship between the decline in agricultural employment and the supply of cheap labour in the factory context.

The table lists the main ways of using prepositions. Find one example of each in the text.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun + preposition</th>
<th>purpose of</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Verb + preposition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective + preposition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phrasal verb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preposition of place</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preposition of time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phrase</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NB the difference between phrasal verbs and verbs with prepositions:

The cars are **made in** Korea. (verb + preposition = easy to understand)

The writer **made up** the story in a night. (phrasal verb = hard to understand)

2. **Study these further examples of preposition use and decide on their type.**

a) There are a number of limitations to be considered . . . (noun +)

b) The results would be applicable to all managers . . . ( )

c) . . . the data was gathered from a questionnaire ( )

d) All the items were placed within their categories ( )

e) The results of the investigation are still pertinent . . . ( )

f) The respondents had spent on average 4.9 years . . . ( )
3. Insert a suitable preposition before or after the nouns in the sentences below.

a) Evidence is presented in support... the value of women’s work.

b) A small change... demand can lead to large price rises.

c) Many examples... high levels of calcium were found.

d) No cure... malaria has yet been found.

e) We tried to assess the feasibility... allowing children to choose their own subjects.

f) The second point is their impact... developing countries.

4. Complete the following phrases with the correct prepositions.

a) ... the whole e) in support...

b) point... view f) ... the other hand

c) in respect... g) ... order to

d) ... spite of h) standard... living

5. Complete the following sentences with suitable prepositions of place or time.

a) .......... the respondents, few had any experience of working abroad.


c) Most workers .......... the European Union retire before the age .......... 60.

d) Albert Einstein was born .......... Germany .......... 1879.

e) Many flowers open their petals .......... the morning and close them .......... night.

f) .......... the surface, there is no difference .......... .. male and female responses.

6. Complete the following text with suitable prepositions.

This study sets a)... to answer the controversial question b)... whether increased food supply c)... a country
makes a significant contribution d) reducing malnutrition e) children. It uses data collected f) seventy-five countries g) 1969 and 1987. The findings are that there was a considerable improvement h) the majority i) countries, despite population increases j) the period. However, a clear distinction was found k) the poorest countries (e.g. l) South Asia), where the improvement was greatest, and the wealthier states such as those m) North Africa. Other factors, notably the educational level n) women, were also found to be critical o) improving childhood nutrition.
3.14 Punctuation

1. Capitals

   It is difficult to give precise rules about the use of capital letters in modern English. However, they should be used in the following cases:

   a) The first word in a sentence   *In the beginning...*
   
   b) Names of organisations   *Sheffield Hallam University*
   
   c) Days and months   *Friday 21st July*
   
   d) Nationality words   *France and the French*
   
   e) Names of people/places   *Dr Martin Turner from Edinburgh*
   
   f) Titles (capitalise main words only)   *The Uses of Literacy/ The Duke of Kent*

2. Apostrophes (*

   These are one of the most misused features of English punctuation. They are mainly used in two situations:

   a) to show contractions   *It’s generally believed...*

   NB Contractions are not common in academic English.

   b) with possessives   *The professor’s secretary (singular)*
   
   *Students’ marks (plural)*

3. Semi-colons (;)

   They are used to show the link between two connected phrases, when a comma would be too weak and a full stop too strong.

   Twenty people were interviewed for the first study; thirty-three for the second.

   Semi-colons are also used to divide up items in a list when they have a complex structure:

   Among the presents received by the president were three oil paintings of himself, all flattering; a pair of green parrots, which were very noisy; a solid gold medal; and three or four suits of clothes.

   NB Semi-colons are quite rare in most types of writing.

4. Colons (:)

   a) to introduce explanations   *The meeting was postponed: the Dean was ill.*
b) to start a list

Two factors were discussed: cultural and social.

c) to introduce a quotation

As Orwell said: ‘all art is propaganda’.

5. Quotation marks/inverted commas (” ” ‘ ’)

a) Single quotation marks are used to emphasise a word, to give quotations from other writers and to show direct speech:

The word ‘quiz’ was first used in the nineteenth century.

Goodwin’s (1977) analysis of habit . . . indicates that, in general, ‘it will be more difficult to reverse a trend than to accentuate it’.

‘Can anyone find the answer?’ asked the lecturer.

NB Longer quotations are usually indented (i.e. have a wider margin) or are set in smaller type.

b) Double quotation marks are used to show quotations inside quotations (nested quotations):

As James remarked: ‘Martin’s concept of “internal space” requires close analysis.’

c) Quotation marks are used for the names of articles and chapters, but book or journal titles use italics:


6. Others

Hyphens (-) are used with certain words and structures:
well-engineered/co-operative/3-year-old

Exclamation marks (!) and question marks (?):

‘Well!’ he shouted, ‘Who would believe it?’

Brackets ( ) are used to contain information of lesser importance:

There were only thirty-one marriages (out of 13,829) in which ‘baker’ was listed.

7. Punctuate the following sentences.

a) on tuesday june 6 1759 in the church at derby nicolas james married mary dewey

b) professor rowan's new book the triumph of capitalism is published in new york
c) how many people would agree with John Lennon when he said all you need is love

d) the probability was calculated for each of the three faculties: physics, biology, and law

e) as Cammack (1994) points out, Latin America is creating a new phenomenon: democracy without citizens

f) thousands of new words such as website enter the English language each year

g) Dr. Tanner’s latest study focuses on children’s reactions to stress in the playground

h) she scored 56% on the main course the previous semester; she had achieved 67%.

8. Punctuate the following text.

The London School of Business is offering three new courses this year: Economics with Psychology, Introduction to Management, and E-commerce. The first is taught by Dr. Jennifer Hillary and runs from October to January. The second, Introduction to Management for MSC Finance students, is offered in the second semester and is assessed by coursework only. Professor Wang’s course in E-commerce runs in both the autumn and the spring and is for more experienced students.
1. Relative pronouns (*who*/*whose*/*where*/*which*/*that*) introduce a relative clause.

   Saturn, *which* is encircled by rings, is much larger than the Earth.
   The college *where* he studied has been closed down.
   The teacher *who* interviewed me was a specialist in ancient music.
   Dr Yamada, *whose* lecture I attended, presented the prizes.
   He wrote about the area *that* I was interested in.

Which relative pronouns are used for:

   a) places?  b) people?  c) things?  d) possession?

2. Insert a suitable relative pronoun in these sentences and underline the clause.

   a) The book .................. he wanted had been borrowed by someone else.
   b) Beijing, ................. she studied for 6 months, used to be called Peking.
   c) Charlie Chaplin, ................ was born in England, was a great film comedian.
   d) A hydrometer is an instrument ............... is used to measure density in liquids.
   e) Few people have heard of the man ............... invented television.
   f) Mercury, ................. is a liquid element, is used in many industrial processes.

3. As can be seen from the examples above, there are two kinds of relative clauses:

   a) those which define the subject. In this case the relative clause must be included.
      The college where he studied has been closed down.
   b) those which give additional details. Here the relative clause could be removed and the meaning would still be clear.
      Saturn, which is encircled by rings, is much larger than the Earth.

      In type (b) the relative clause is surrounded by commas (,) or dashes (–).

   *Decide which of the sentences in (2) define the subject.*
4. Decide if the following sentences contain defining (D) or additional detail (A) clauses.

a) Akio Morita was the person who invented the Walkman.
D

b) The first thing that he did was to introduce a new system of assessment.
A

c) The medical school, which has a very good reputation, charges £20,000 per year.
D

d) The president (who enjoyed playing jazz) was elected for a second term.
A

e) A hurricane is a tropical storm which can do enormous damage.
D

5. In defining clauses both that and which can be used with things:

Toyota is a Japanese company that/which makes cars.

But with clauses that provide additional detail only which can be used:

Volkswagen, which is a German company, is a major car producer.

Add relative clauses to the following sentences to provide additional detail.

a) The main campus covers 29 hectares and houses six faculties.

b) The River Nile runs from the mountains of East Africa to the Mediterranean.

c) Moscow has a population of more than 8 million people.

d) Nelson Mandela was imprisoned for over 25 years.

e) Apples are grown in many countries with temperate climates.

6. In defining clauses where the relative pronoun is the object its use is optional:

She applied to the university (that/which) her tutor had recommended.

The course (that/which) I wanted to take was not offered this semester.

The tutor (who) she wanted to meet was away for two months.

When the relative pronoun is the subject it must be included:

The scientists who discovered DNA worked in Cambridge.
3.15 Relative Pronouns

Decide if the relative pronouns in the following are necessary. If not, cross them out.

a) It was not known who was responsible for the explosion.
b) The man who I read about was born in Scotland.
c) The book which the professor wrote was remarkably short.
d) Squirrels are mammals that live mainly in trees.
e) The article which she referred to was published last year.

7. Insert suitable relative pronouns in the gaps below. Write X if the pronoun is optional.

King Camp Gillette, a) .................. invention of the disposable razor blade made his name world-famous, was an American b) .................. had spent 40 years looking for a saleable invention. The idea c) ............. ....... changed his fortunes occurred in 1895, but he met considerable difficulties producing a thin, sharp blade d) ............... could be made cheaply. He sold shares in the company to pay for the development work e) ............... his partner, William Dickerson, was doing. In 1903, f) ............... was their first year of business, they produced only fifty-one razors. But due to intensive advertising, g) ............... potential Gillette quickly recognised, they rapidly increased sales to 250,000 two years later. The modern razor, h) ............... ............... is usually double-bladed, is directly related to the idea i) ............... Gillette had over a hundred years ago.
3.16 Singular or Plural?

1. This can be a confusing area, but the following illustrate the main areas of difficulty:
   a) Nouns should agree with verbs, and pronouns with nouns.
      
      *Those problems are unique.*
      
      *There are many arguments in favour.*
   b) Uncountable nouns and irregular plurals have no final -s.
      
      Most students receive free *tuition*.
      
      DNA is located in every part; *hair, nails, teeth . . .*
   c) General statements normally use the plural.
      
      State universities *have lower fees*.
   d) *Each/every* are followed by singular nouns.
      
      *Every student* gets financial support.
   e) Two linked nouns should agree.
      
      Both the *similarities* and *differences* are important.

*Find the mistake in the following and decide what type (a–e above) it is.*

   a) The proposal has both advantages and disadvantage. ( )
   b) A majority of children in Thailand is vaccinated against measles. ( )
   c) There are few young people in rural area. ( )
   d) Many places are experiencing an increase in crimes. ( )
   e) Each towns have their own councils. ( )

2. Study the following ‘group’ phrases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular + plural</th>
<th>plural + plural</th>
<th>plural + uncountable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>half the universities</td>
<td>two types of institutions</td>
<td>three areas of enquiry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a range of businesses</td>
<td>various kinds of courses</td>
<td>several fields of research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one of the elements</td>
<td>many species of ants</td>
<td>rates of progress</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that if a verb has more than one subject it must be plural, even if the preceding noun is singular:

Scores of students, some teachers and the president *are* at the meeting.

Their valuable suggestions and hard work *were* vital.
3.16 Singular or Plural?

Certain ‘group’ nouns, e.g. team/army/government, can be followed by either a singular or plural verb:

The team was defeated three times last month.
(collectively)

The team were travelling by train or bus. (separately)

3. **Underline and correct the mistakes in the following extracts from student essays (one per sentence).**

a) More must be done to solve that problems of development.

b) The attitude towards this issue vary from person to person.

c) Many culture from around the world are found in the city.

d) In the country the people is more friendly.

e) It is common to move from the countryside to find job.

f) Huge number of cars use the motorway.

g) The city have disadvantages such as a high rate of crime.

h) Public transport lets us move to another places easily.

i) There are bad pollution due to traffic congestion.

j) People should not ignore important factors that affect their life.

4. **Read the text and choose the correct alternative.**

A large number of company/companies has/have developed website/websites in the last few years. Trading using the internet is called e-commerce/e-commerces, and this/these is/are divided into two main kinds: B2B and B2C. Many business/businesses want to use the internet to sell directly to its/their customers (B2C), but large numbers have experienced trouble/troubles with security/securities and other practical issues. In addition, the high start-up costs and the expense/expenses of advertising means/mean that this/these company/companies often struggle to make a profit.
1. Study the use of the following:

   She went on a training course for 6 weeks. (with numbers)
   The report must be finished by June 12th. (on or before)
   He has been president since 1998. (usually with present perfect)
   They are studying in Bristol until March. (end of a period)
   The library was opened 2 years ago. (usually with past)
   The hotel is closed during the winter. (with noun)

   *Before* writing he studied over 100 sources. (often followed by -ing form; also *after*)
   He applied in May and was accepted two months later. (often used with numbers; also *earlier*)

2. Compare the tenses used with the following phrases:

   Recently, there has been a sharp rise in internet use. (present perfect)
   Currently, there is a vigorous debate about human rights. (present)
   Last year there was an election in Spain. (past)
   In the last year there has been a sharp rise in inflation. (present perfect)

3. Study Rachel’s schedule for her last business trip and complete the sentences below with a suitable word. It is now April 16th.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Activity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>March 12th</td>
<td>Fly London–Milan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March 13th–14th</td>
<td>Conference in Milan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March 15th</td>
<td>Train Milan–Paris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March 16th</td>
<td>Meeting in Paris office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March 17th</td>
<td>Fly Paris–Hong Kong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March 18th–19th</td>
<td>Tour of new development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March 20th</td>
<td>Fly HK–London</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   a) ............... month Rachel made a business trip.
   b) ............... her trip she visited three countries.
   c) ............... March 18th she had travelled 11,000 kilometres.
   d) She was away from home ............... nine days altogether.
   e) A month ............... she was in Paris.
   f) She stayed in Hong Kong ............... March 20th.
   g) ............... she is writing a report on her trip.
4. **Choose the best alternative in each case.**

   a) *Currently/recently* she has been researching the life cycle of a species of wasp.

   b) She lived in France *until/during* the war broke out, and then she went home.

   c) Professor Yung has worked here *since/for* sixteen years.

   d) *Last month/in the last month* a new book was published on the subject.

   e) Applications must be received *by/on* November 25th.

   f) *Since/during* her arrival last May she has reorganised the department.

   g) *During/for* the winter most farmers in the region find work in the towns.

5. **Complete the following text with a suitable word or phrase.**

   **EATING OUT**

   a) ............... the last few decades there has been a significant change in eating habits in the UK. b) ............... the early 1980s eating out in restaurants and cafes has increased steadily. There are several reasons for this trend.

   50 years c) ............... most women were housewives, and cooked for their families every day. But d) ............... , with more women working outside the home, less time has been available for food preparation. e) ............... , 71% of women aged 20–45 are at work, and f) ............... 2015 it is estimated that this will rise to 84%.

   Another factor is the growth in disposable income, which has risen significantly g) ............... the late 1970s. With more money in their pockets people are more likely to save the trouble of shopping and cooking by visiting their local restaurant.
6. **Study the details of Napoleon’s life, and complete the biography below.**

- **1769** born in Corsica
- **1784** entered military school in Paris
- **1789** French revolution started
- **1793** promoted to brigadier general
- **1796** appointed to command army of Italy; married Josephine
- **1799** returned from Egypt and became First Consul of France
- **1807** France controlled most of continental Europe
- **1810** divorced Josephine and married Marie-Louise, daughter of Austrian emperor
- **1812** forced to retreat from Russia
- **1814** exiled to island of Elba
- **1815** defeated at battle of Waterloo and exiled to island of St Helena
- **1821** died in exile

Napoleon entered military school at the age of 15, 5 years a) ................. the start of the French revolution.

He rose quickly, becoming brigadier general at 24 and commander of the Italian army three years b) ............... At 30 he was effectively the French dictator, and due to his military genius France controlled most of Europe c) ................. 1807. When he divorced his first wife, Josephine, in 1810, they had been married d) ................. 14 years. His campaigns were successful e) ................. 1812, but in that year the disastrous retreat from Moscow marked the start of his decline.

However, f) ................. his years of absolute power he had made significant changes to European law and government. Although he died nearly 200 years g) ................., Napoleon’s influence is still felt throughout the European continent.
1. A feature of most academic writing is a tendency to use rather formal verbs to express the writer’s meaning accurately:

- supply of energy required to accelerate the growth
- the development that is envisaged here needs to be not only sustainable

In spoken English we would be more likely to use speed up and imagined.

**Study the list below and find a synonym in each case.**

NB Some of these verbs, e.g. hold, are used in academic writing with a special meaning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Example of use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to adapt</td>
<td>the health system has been adapted from France</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to arise</td>
<td>a similar situation arises when we look at younger children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to carry out</td>
<td>the largest study was carried out in Finland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to characterise</td>
<td>developing countries are characterised by . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to clarify</td>
<td>the project was designed to clarify these contradictions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to concentrate on</td>
<td>that study concentrated on older children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be concerned with</td>
<td>the programme is concerned primarily with . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to demonstrate</td>
<td>further research has demonstrated that few factors . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to determine</td>
<td>the water content was experimentally determined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to discriminate</td>
<td>a failure to discriminate between the two species</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to emphasise</td>
<td>the 1987 report emphasised energy efficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to establish</td>
<td>the northern boundary was established first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to exhibit</td>
<td>half of the patients exhibited signs of improvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to focus on</td>
<td>her work focused on female managers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to generate</td>
<td>a question which has generated a range of responses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to hold</td>
<td>Newton’s second Law, ( F=ma ), holds everywhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to identify</td>
<td>three main areas have been identified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to imply</td>
<td>previous research implies that size is a good predictor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to indicate</td>
<td>all the surveys indicate that employees prefer pay rises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to interact</td>
<td>understand how the two systems interact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to interpret</td>
<td>the conclusion can be interpreted as a limited success</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to manifest</td>
<td>as manifested in anti-social behaviour</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. Select the better alternative in each case.

a) The survey **proved/yielded** a surprising amount of information on student politics.

b) This question **arose/manifested** when older students were examined.

c) Both writers attempt to **demonstrate/implies** that older employees are more reliable.

d) Darwin **held/indicated** very strong views on this issue.

e) It must be **proved/emphasised** that these results are only provisional.

f) One of the chimpanzees **supplemented/exhibited** signs of nervousness.

g) Freud was **concerned/identified** primarily with middle class patients.

h) The study was **generated/carried out** to explore the issue of religious tolerance.

3. Insert a suitable verb from the box below into each gap.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>overcome</th>
<th>predict</th>
<th>demonstrate</th>
<th>interpret</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>discriminate</td>
<td>recognise</td>
<td>clarify</td>
<td>focus on</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a) The results clearly ............... that younger children learn quicker.

b) This paper attempts to ............... the confusion surrounding studies of infertility.

c) Social class must be ............... as a leading factor in educational success.

d) His study fails to ............... between the various types of reinforced concrete.
e) It seems profitable to ............... the record of smaller companies.

f) The noises made by whales have been ............... in several ways.

g) This problem was ............... by reversing the direction of the gas flow.

h) Most experts failed to ............... the collapse of Soviet power in 1989.
1. Modal verbs used in academic writing tend to have three main meanings:
   a) Ability
      *May* and *can* are similar but *can* is more common:
      The assessment . . . *may* be made in a variety of ways
      . . . with smaller samples this method *cannot* be used . . .
      . . . one faculty *can* have more than one academic programme . . .
   b) Degrees of certainty
      *Will* and *should* are used for predictions of near certainty (*will* is stronger):
      . . . in the knowledge that the parent *will* be there when needed.
      Improved facilities *should* lead to lower staff turnover.
      *May* and *might* both suggest possibility:
      Landfill carbon sequestration *might* supplement fossil fuel combustion . . .
      . . . multiple factors *may* lead to a psychiatric consultation . . .
      *Would* and *could* are used in conditional situations (not always with *if*):
      . . . or *would* we conclude that the observation is uninformative?
      . . . estimates of the model’s parameters *could* conceivably be computed . . .
   c) Degrees of obligation
      *Must* suggests strong obligation, *should* is for recommendations:
      To obtain a total estimate . . . several approximations *must* be used
      A primary research emphasis . . . *should* then be on identifying . . .

2. Complete the following sentences with a suitable modal of ability.
   a) The question is whether democracy . . . survive in such difficult conditions.
   b) Fifty years ago a new house . . . . . . . be bought for £1,500.
c) Students ........... be expected to write more than one long essay a week.
d) The mistakes of past historians ........... now be clearly seen.
e) Jenkins (1976) argued that aluminium ........... be used in place of steel.

3. **Complete the following with a suitable modal of certainty.**
   
a) It ........... not be surprising if the company were bought by a rival.
b) Various social situations ........... lead to a child’s loss of confidence.
c) Other studies confirm that a permanent shift in transport use ........... occur.
d) By 2020 most children ........... have internet access by the age of 5.
e) If the pressure is lowered, the reaction ........... take place more quickly.
f) In the long term, solar power ........... make a significant contribution.
g) Many seventeenth-century farmers ........... write their names.

4. **Use a suitable modal of obligation to complete the following.**
   
a) Students studying abroad ........... take some of their favourite music with them.
b) All books ........... be returned to the main library by June 19th.
c) First-year undergraduates ........... take at least three modules from the list below.
d) The second part of the essay ........... focus on the differences in the results.

5. **In the following sentences, the meaning changes according to the modal verb used. Find two possibilities, giving the meanings in each case.**

   Example:
   
   Using the internet means the company can sell its products worldwide. (ability)
   Using the internet means the company might sell its products worldwide. (possibility)

   a) The poorest people ........... be helped by improving the supply of water.
The poorest people . . . . . . . . . . . . be helped by improving the supply of water.

b) Tribal leaders of the first century BC . . . . . . . . have used writing.
    Tribal leaders of the first century BC . . . . . . . . have used writing.

c) Few people . . . . . . . . . . . . agree to take part in the experiment.
    Few people . . . . . . . . . . . . agree to take part in the experiment.

d) Care . . . . . . . . . . . . always be taken when interpreting nineteenth-century data.
    Care . . . . . . . . . . . . always be taken when interpreting nineteenth-century data.

e) By the mid-twenty-first century poverty . . . . . . . . . . . . be abolished.
    By the mid-twenty-first century poverty . . . . . . . . . . . . be abolished.

f) Repeating the study . . . . . . . . . . . . confirm their findings.
    Repeating the study . . . . . . . . . . . . confirm their findings.
1. The passive is used when the writer wants to focus on the result, not on the cause:

   *The book was written by my father.* (passive)

   *My father wrote the book.* (active)

   In the first sentence, the emphasis is on the book, in the second on the writer. So the passive is often used in written English when the cause (a person or thing) is less important or unknown.

   *The treaty will be signed next year.* (by someone)

   *The tower was destroyed a century ago.* (by something)

   The cause of the action can be shown by adding *by* . . . :

   *The ship was launched in 1908 by Princess Mary.*

2. The passive is also used in written work to provide a more impersonal style:

   The findings were evaluated.

   *Change the following into the passive.*

   a) We collected the data and compared the two groups.

   b) I interviewed 120 people in three social classes.

   c) They checked the results and found several errors.

   d) We will make an analysis of the findings.

3. An adverb is often inserted in a passive form to add detail:

   *This process is commonly called ‘networking’.*

   *Change the following sentences from active to passive and insert a suitable adverb from the box below.*

   Example:

   A storm damaged 40% of the houses in the port.

   40% of the houses in the port were badly damaged by a storm.

   a) The Connors family ran the company until 1981.

   b) They had built the house near the station.

   c) Picasso painted the portrait of the old man.

   d) They provided pencils for all students in the exam.

   e) Doctors tested over 550 people for the disease over a 3-year period.

   f) The researchers calculated the percentages to three decimal places.
4. In most texts the active and the passive are mixed.

_**Read the following article and underline the passives.**_

**BOOTS THE CHEMISTS**

When John Boot died at 45, he was worn out by the strain of establishing his herbal medicine business. He had worked his way up from his early years as a farm labourer to be the owner of a substantial business. He was born in 1815, became a member of a Methodist chapel in Nottingham, and later moved to the city.

Concerned by the situation of the poor, who were unable to afford a doctor, in 1849 he opened a herbal medicine shop which was called the British and American Botanic Establishment. In the early stages John was helped financially by his father in law, while his mother provided herbal knowledge.

On his death in 1860 the business was taken over by his wife, and she was soon assisted by their 10-year-old son, Jesse. He quickly showed the business ability which transformed his father’s shop into a national business. He opened more shops in poor districts of the city and pioneered advertising methods. Another innovation was to do all his business in cash, rather than offering credit.

5. _Could all the passives in the text above be replaced by the active?_  
   _What would be the result if most of them were?_

6. The passive is used more in written than in spoken English, but should not be overused, as it can give a very formal tone. In the following text, which continues the history of Boots, passives are used throughout. _Change some of them into the active._
In 1889 he was introduced to Florence Rowe, the daughter of a bookseller, while on holiday. Her influence was felt by the business after they were married: the product range was enlarged to include stationery and books. In addition she was responsible for the introduction of the Boots subscription library and in-store cafes.

During World War I the factories were used to make a variety of products from sterilisers to gas masks. But by 1920 Jesse was being attacked by arthritis and was worried by the economic prospects. Boots was sold to an American rival for £2m. This, however, was made bankrupt during the Depression and Boots was then bought by a British group for £6m, while Jesse’s son, John, was made chairman. The famous No. 7 cosmetics range was launched in the 1930s. In the 1939–45 war the saccharin equivalent to 700,000 tons of sugar was produced in the factories.
1. **The following verbs are generally used with these prepositions:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb + prep.</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>add to</td>
<td>The bad weather <em>added to</em> the general’s difficulties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>associate with</td>
<td>Monetarism is an economic policy <em>associated with</em> Mrs Thatcher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>believe in</td>
<td>The survey showed that 65% <em>believed in</em> life after death.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blame for</td>
<td>He <em>blamed</em> unfair questions <em>for</em> his poor exam results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concentrate on (also: focus on)</td>
<td>She dropped all her hobbies to <em>concentrate on</em> her work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consist of</td>
<td>Parliament <em>consists of</em> two Houses: the Commons and the Lords.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depend on (also: rely on)</td>
<td>The company <em>depends on</em> IT for a rapid flow of sales data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>derive from</td>
<td>All modern computers <em>derive from</em> wartime decoding machines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>divide into</td>
<td>Trees are <em>divided into</em> two main types: conifers and deciduous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invest in</td>
<td>Far more money needs to be <em>invested in</em> primary education.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn from</td>
<td>All successful students <em>learn from</em> their mistakes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay for</td>
<td>Goods delivered in April must be <em>paid for</em> by June 30th.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>point out</td>
<td>Goodson (2001) <em>points out</em> the dangers of overspecialisation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specialise in</td>
<td>This department <em>specialises in</em> French-Canadian poetry.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. **Complete the following with suitable verbs and prepositions.**

a) The enquiry .................. the cause of the accident, not the consequences.

b) Dr Cracknell .................. that there were only two weeks before the deadline.

c) Fewer British students are .................. foreign languages.

d) The theory of relativity will always be .................. Albert Einstein.

e) A football pitch is .................. two halves.

f) A series of strikes were .................. the decline in production during May.
g) Millions of men died for the cause they ...................
   ....

h) Every nation needs a public transport system it can ...........
   ............

3. With certain verbs more than one preposition is possible
   (note the change of meaning in some cases).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb + preposition</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>compare to/with</td>
<td>The stock market has been <em>compared with/to</em> a casino.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look at/into</td>
<td>The evidence needs to be <em>looked at/into</em> more carefully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look for</td>
<td>Most students use search engines to <em>look for</em> information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apply to</td>
<td>He <em>applied to</em> the committee for a grant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apply for</td>
<td>To <em>apply for</em> the job three forms must be completed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Choose suitable verbs and prepositions from (1) and (3) to complete the following text.

The new model of camera, the Alpha 616, a) ........... the previous model, the Alpha 615. The new model b) ......................... a standard camera with a small tape recorder c) ....................... it. This allows the photographer to talk to the camera. The marketing unit d) ......................... the camera market carefully and discovered that many people forget where they take pictures. These people can now e) ........... the Alpha 616 to remember for them.

The Alpha company has f) ......................... over £2 million ......... the new product. g) ................. .............. other projects this may seem a small amount, but it is not a large firm. It is hoped that customers will h) ......................... over £100 ............ the camera, which the company will i) ................... for significant profits next year.
3.22 Verbs of Reference

1. Referring verbs are used to summarise another writer’s ideas.

   Wilsher *argued* that the single play had been consigned to television history.

   Heffernan (1972) *found* that adaptation to prison was facilitated by . . .

   They may also be used to introduce a quotation.

   . . . as Peter Huber has *observed*, ‘Coal itself is yesterday’s landfill . . .’

2. Most of these verbs are followed by a noun clause beginning with *that*.

   a) The following mean that the writer is presenting a case:

      argue    consider    hypothesise
      suggest   believe    think     state

      Martins (1975) *claimed* that many mergers led to lower profits.

   b) A second group describe a reaction to another writer’s position:

      accept   admit     agree    deny    doubt

      Handlesmith *doubts* Martins’s claim that lower profits resulted from . . .

   c) Others include:

      assume    conclude    discover    explain    imply
      indicate    maintain    presume    reveal    show

      Patel (2003) *assumes* that inflation will remain low.

      Borovna *implies* a close relation between the Queen and her minister.

3. Write a sentence referring to what the following writers said (more than one verb may be suitable). Use the past tense.

   Example: Z: ‘My research shows that cats are cleverer than dogs’.

   Z *claimed*/argued that cats were cleverer than dogs.

   a) A: ‘You could be right. I may have made a mistake in my estimate.’

   b) B: ‘I did not say that sheep were faster than horses.’

   c) C: ‘Whales are very intelligent animals.’

   d) D: ‘I support A’s position on cats and dogs.’

   e) E: ‘I’m not sure, but cows probably get cold in winter.’
3.22 Verbs of Reference

f) F: ‘After much research, I’ve found that pigs can’t fly.’
g) G: ‘On my travels in the jungle I found a new type of frog.’
h) H: ‘I think it unlikely that cats can learn to talk.’
i) I: ‘Somebody should compare mouse behaviour with rat behaviour.’
j) J: ‘There may be a link between health and the seasons.’

4. A small group of verbs is followed by (somebody/thing + for + noun/gerund):

blame censure commend condemn criticise

Lee (1998) blamed foreign investors for the panic.
NB All except commend have a negative meaning.

A final group is followed by (somebody/thing + as + noun/gerund):

assess characterise classify define describe
evaluate identify interpret portray present

Terry interprets rising oil prices as a result of Asian recovery.

5. Rewrite the following statements using verbs from the lists in (4).

Example: K: ‘X’s work is responsible for many of our current economic problems.’

K blamed X’s work for many of our current economic problems.

a) L: ‘She was very careless about her research methods.’

b) M: ‘There are three main species of bees.’

c) N: ‘The cat family are the kings of the animal world.’

d) O: ‘I’m sure that dogs bark because they are nervous.’

e) P: ‘Trying to estimate the number of animal species is like shooting in the dark.’

f) Q: ‘Darwin was the greatest naturalist of the nineteenth century.’

g) R: ‘An insect is a six-legged arthropod.’

h) S: ‘Queen Victoria was a short, rather fat woman with dark eyes.’

i) T: ‘Gregor Mendel can be considered the founder of modern genetics.’
3.23 Verbs – Tenses

1. Decide which tenses are used in the following examples (verbs in italics) and complete the table to explain why.

   a) According to Hoffman (1996), small firms respond more rapidly to changes . . .

   b) Currently, inflation in the US is rising while imports are falling.

   c) Since November there has been a significant increase in cases of influenza.

   d) In the last three years more students have been working part-time.

   e) After the war there was a sharp rise in divorce.

   f) During 1998 they were developing a new system.

   g) The study was published in June. It showed that in 1998 and 1999 profits had increased by 55%.

   h) The forecast concludes that interest rates will reach 7.5% next year.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Reason for use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NB In the last month/year/decade = present perfect (unfinished period).

Last month/year/decade = simple past (finished period).

2. Complete the following sentences by selecting the most suitable tenses.

   a) Home ownership . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . (rise) steadily since 1950.
b) GM ....................................... (stand for) genetically modified.

c) Last year the police ......................... (record) a record number of crimes.

d) When she died in 1986 she .................... (write) over fifty books.

e) By 2050 average temperatures ................... (be) at least 2 degrees higher.

f) At the moment the bank ......................... (consider) a merger proposal from Barclays.

g) When the market crashed the company ............... (build) three hotels in Asia.

h) Lee (1965) ................................. (dispute) Sakamoto’s theory.

i) In the last 6 years inflation ...................... (fall) sharply in Europe.

3. **Simple or continuous?**

a) In general, the continuous is used to focus on the activity itself or to stress its temporary nature. Compare the following:

   She has been writing that report for 6 days.  (activity)
   He is writing a travel article.  (temporarily)
   She writes children’s books.  (usually)

b) Also note that certain verbs are rarely used in the continuous. They are state verbs like prefer, own and believe. Another similar group is known as performative verbs (assume, deny, promise, refuse, suggest).

4. **Select either simple or continuous in each case:**

a) The team at Cambridge ......................... (work) on a rare type of brain disease.

b) He .................. (believe) he will finish the study early next year.

c) This magazine ....................... (look for) a writer on new technology.

d) In the late 1990s she was working on rice plants but now she .................. (research) potatoes.

e) The average age of marriage in Britain ............... (rise) by 6 years since 1970.

f) The company ....................... (own) factories in twelve countries.
g) Most people in the city (live) within two kilometres of their work.

h) Dr McPherson (attend) a conference in South America this week.

5. When writing paragraphs, it is important to be clear about which time phrases control the tenses of verbs:

For years, the condition of the family has produced some of the strongest debate heard in America. The statistics of collapse have appeared simple and clear. The proportion of children born outside marriage rose from 18% in 1980 to 33% in 1999. The share of households made up of two parents and their children fell from 45% in 1960 to only 23% in 2000.

In this case, the time phrase For years controls the tense of the first two sentences (present perfect). The following two sentences are in the simple past because of the dates 1980, 1999, 1960 and 2000 which show finished periods.

6. Read the text below and select the most suitable tense for each verb in brackets, considering the time phrases in italics.

For a long time gardeners a) (suspect) that using green fingers is just as effective as talking softly to plants to encourage growth. Scientists b) (develop) a robot that strokes young plants to make them grow stronger and faster. But after research a year ago c) (confirm) that plants need the human touch, scientists at Greenwich University d) (develop) the stroking machine they call Dr Green.

Dr Green e) (be display) at the last Chelsea Flower Show, where it f) (demonstrate) the technique of brushing the tips of young plants to produce stronger specimens. David Carey, who is leading the research, g) (say) that the machine could avoid the use of chemicals.

Currently, Dr Green h) (be test) on a large scale by a commercial grower. Stroking plants once a day i) (make) them 30% stronger, which is what you need before you plant them out. When another kind of plant was stroked once a week, it j) (develop) increased insect resistance. The research team hope that a cheap version of Dr Green k) (be available) to amateur gardeners by 2007.
Student Introduction

There are various possible formats for different types of essays, as well as non-academic texts such as letters and CVs. For instance, if a selection of formal letters is studied it will be seen that different styles of headings and layout are used by different organisations. However, the following models are provided so that students can use the outlines confident that they will be acceptable in most situations.

Many courses require students to conduct a survey, so unit 4.3 Reporting and Designing Surveys provides a model for a survey report. Unit 4.4 Taking Ideas from Sources gives a model for the vital process of note-making, paraphrasing and referencing. Comparison and discussion are common components of essay titles, and the models given here show one way of answering the questions. However, it must be remembered that both comparison and discussion (plus other elements) may be needed in the same essay.

Faculties and departments may give new students guidance (e.g. handbooks) about what is required in terms of style and layout, and if this is not available it is worth asking your teacher whether it is acceptable to use sub-headings, numbering and other layout features.
1. You have applied for a place on an MA course at a British university. This is the letter you have received in reply.

   a) Arts & Social Sciences Admissions Office  
   Wye House  
   Central Campus  
   University of Borchester  
   Borchester BR3 5HT  
   United Kingdom

   b) Ms P Tan  
   54 Sydney Road  
   Rowborough RB1 6FD

c) Ref: MB/373

d) 3 May 2006

e) Dear Ms Tan

f) Application for MA International Studies

   g) Further to your recent application, I would like to invite you to the university for an informal interview on Tuesday 21st May at 11 am. You will be able to meet the course supervisor, Dr Schmidt, and look round the department.

   h) A map of the campus and instructions for finding the university are enclosed.

   i) Please let me know if you will be able to attend on the date given.

   j) Yours sincerely

   k) M. Bramble

   l) Mick Bramble  
   Administrative Assistant  
   Arts & Social Sciences

Enc.

**Label the following features of formal letters with the letters (a–l) from the left margin above.**

(d) Date  
( . . . ) Request for response  
( . . . ) Address of recipient  
( . . . ) Further details  
( . . . ) Sender’s reference  
( . . . ) Signature

( . . . ) Ending  
( . . . ) Greetings  
( . . . ) Address of sender  
( . . . ) Reason for writing  
( . . . ) Subject headline  
( . . . ) Writer’s name and title
Note the following points.

a) When writing to somebody whose name you do not know, e.g. The Manager, use *Dear Sir* and *Yours faithfully*.

b) A formal letter generally uses the family name in the greeting (*Dear Ms Tan*). Certain organisations may, however, use a first name with a family name or even a first name alone (*Dear Jane Tan*/*Dear Jane*).

c) If the sender includes a reference it is helpful to quote it in your reply.

2. **Write a reply to Mr Bramble making the following points:**
   
a) You will attend the interview on the date given.

b) You would like to have the interview one hour later, because of train times.

3. **Study the following newspaper advert. You have decided to apply for this job. Make notes for your letter of application, then write the letter, paying attention to layout as well as content.**

   **STAFF REQUIRED FOR RECEPTION WORK AT CITY HOTEL**

   We are looking for enthusiastic and helpful receptionists (m/f) to join our team. Candidates should be well-presented and able to speak at least two languages. Hotel experience not necessary as training will be given. Ability to get on with people and work in a team more important. Some evening and weekend work. Good conditions and rates of pay.

   Apply in writing with CV and covering letter to: The Manager, Hotel Nelson, Queens Road, Rowborough RB2 4RN quoting Ref. EN2.
1. CV stands for *curriculum vitae* (also known as a *résumé*). A CV is a summary of your education and work experience, often requested by prospective employers. Most professionals store their CVs electronically so that they can be updated when necessary.

2. There is considerable debate about the format of CVs, and much depends on your experience and the area you are working in. The example given below is relatively short, as would be expected for a recent graduate.

Sarah Ann Atkins  
DOB 19.6.80  
Email: saatkins@virgin.net  

*Career aim*  
To develop my experience in marketing in a senior managerial role, using my knowledge of European languages.

*Career history*  
2004–present  
**Marketing Assistant, Eastern Foods, Derby**  
In my current post I am part of a team involved in marketing our products throughout the UK. I have helped organise several campaigns and given presentations in connection with these.

2000–1  
**English Teacher, Montpellier, France**  
During my year abroad I taught English at a school in Montpellier, which not only helped strengthen my French but also gave me valuable lessons in self-reliance.

*Academic qualifications*  
2004  
**MBA** (Rowborough University Business School)

2003  
**BA (Hons) 2:1 in European Languages** (University of Leeds) with distinction in spoken French

*Skills*  
Languages: knowledge of Spanish and French (advanced)/Italian (good)

ICT: competence with the following applications: Word, Excel, Powerpoint

*Personal*  
I would describe myself as outgoing, friendly and a good communicator. I apply these qualities to establishing good customer relations and working with colleagues as part of a team.
NB

a) The above format is only one possibility and it is worth looking at other CVs to compare layouts.

b) Your address and phone number should be in your covering letter, not on the CV.

c) List qualifications and experience in reverse chronological order, starting with the most recent. Prospective employers are mainly interested in your latest achievements.

d) Do not clutter the CV with details of hobbies which are irrelevant to the job you are applying for. Similarly, your early education is unimportant.

e) Do not just give job titles but explain in detail what you did.

f) Only give references if asked to do so.

3. Prepare a CV for yourself. First make notes of all the important information (with dates), using similar headings to those in the example above. Then organise it as clearly as possible. Finally, type it on a computer and store it so it can be updated in future.
4.3 Reporting and Designing Surveys

1. Surveys, in which people are asked questions about their opinions or behaviour, are a common feature of academic work, especially in fields such as education, psychology and social sciences.

What are the reasons for carrying out surveys? List your ideas below.

a) 

b) 

c) 

2. Study the report of a survey carried out on a university campus. Complete the report by inserting suitable words from the box below into the gaps.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sample</th>
<th>conducted</th>
<th>slightly</th>
<th>respondents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>random</td>
<td>questions</td>
<td>majority</td>
<td>questioned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mentioned</td>
<td>interviewees</td>
<td>common</td>
<td>questionnaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generally</td>
<td>minority</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

STUDENT EXPERIENCE OF PART-TIME WORK

Introduction

With the introduction of course fees and the related increase in student debt, more students are finding it necessary to work part-time. The survey was a) ....... ......... to find out how this work affects student life and study. The research was done by asking students selected at b) ............. on the campus to complete a c) ............. (see Appendix 1). Fifty students were d) ............. on Saturday April 23rd, with approximately equal numbers of male and female students.

Findings

Of the e) ............., 30% currently had part-time jobs, 20% had had part-time jobs, but half had never done any work during university semesters (see Table 1). f) ............. who were working or who had worked were next asked about the reasons for taking the jobs. The most common reason was lack of money (56%), but many students said that they found the work useful experience (32%) and others g) ............. social benefits (12%).
Table 1. Do you have or have you had a part-time job?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Men</th>
<th>Women</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Have job now</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Had job before</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Never had job</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The twenty-five students with work experience were next asked about the effects of the work on their studies. A significant h) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . ...
4.3 Reporting and Designing Surveys

2. What is the main tense in (a) Introduction and Findings, (b) Conclusion?

Explain the reason for the difference.

5. Questionnaire design.

Which is the better question?

i) How old are you?

ii) Are you (a) under 20, (b) between 21 and 30, (c) over 30?

6. What is the main difference between the two questions?

i) What do you think of university students?

ii) Do you think university students are (a) lazy, (b) hardworking, (c) average?

7. How many questions should your questionnaire contain?

When designing your questionnaire:

a) Limit the number of questions so the respondent can answer them in a minute or two. Long and complicated questionnaires will not receive accurate replies.

b) Questions should be clear and simple, and not be too personal.

c) Closed questions (6ii) are easier to process, but open questions (6i) will collect a wider range of responses.

d) You should try asking the questions to a classmate before beginning the full survey, and be ready to modify any that were not clear.

8. You are preparing a survey on one of the following subjects.

Write a questionnaire of no more than six questions to collect the most useful data.

a) How overseas students learn vocabulary

b) Student attitudes to the cinema

c) A comparison of undergraduate and post-graduate leisure activities
1. You have been told to write an essay on the following title: Can money buy happiness?

You have found the following text which seems relevant to this topic. It is part of an article by A. Penec in a journal called *Applied Econometrics* (volume 44, pages 18–27) published in 2003.

**THE MEASUREMENT OF HAPPINESS**

In the last 50 years there has been no apparent increase in personal happiness in Western nations, despite steadily growing economies. In both Europe and the USA surveys have found no greater level of happiness since the 1950s, which seems strange since wealthier people generally claim to be happier than poorer people. In America, for example, more than a third of the richest group said they were ‘very happy’, while only half this number of the poorest made the same claim. Although it would be logical to expect that rising national wealth would lead to greater national happiness, this has not happened. Individually, more money does seem to increase happiness, but when everyone gets richer, no-one appears to feel better.

Economists have recently paid more attention to studying happiness, instead of the more traditional GDP per person. One suggestion has been that people rapidly get used to improvements, and therefore devalue them. Central heating is a good example: whereas 30 years ago it was a luxury item, today it is standard in nearly every home.

2. The text contains four key points:

   a) In the last 50 years there has been no apparent increase in personal happiness in Western nations, despite steadily growing economies.

   b) . . . which seems strange since wealthier people generally claim to be happier than poorer people.

   c) Individually, more money does seem to increase happiness, but when everyone gets richer, no-one appears to feel better.

   d) One suggestion has been that people rapidly get used to improvements, and therefore devalue them.
3. The next step is to make notes of these points, using paraphrase:
   a) Although W. economies expanded since 1950s, no parallel growth in happiness.
   b) But most rich people say they are happier than poor.
   c) Money appears to make individuals happier but not society as a whole.
   d) People soon get accustomed to developments, so don’t appreciate them.

4. These points can now be combined into one paragraph of your essay, using conjunctions where necessary, and including a reference to your source:
   Penec (2003) argues that although Western economies have expanded since the 1950s, there has been no parallel growth in happiness. Surveys indicate that rich people generally say they are happier than poor people, but it appears that although individuals may become happier society as a whole does not. One possible answer is that people soon become accustomed to improvements and so do not appreciate them.

5. Continue the same process with the next section of the text to produce another paragraph of your essay:
   A further explanation for the failure of wealth to increase happiness is the tendency for people to compare their own position to that of their neighbours. Studies show that people would prefer to have a lower income, if their colleagues got less, rather than a higher income while colleagues got more. In other words, happiness seems to depend on feeling better off than other people, rather than on any absolute measure of wealth. Further research suggests that having free time is also closely linked to happiness, so that the pattern of working harder in order to buy more goods is unlikely to increase well-being. Yet Western societies generally encourage employees to spend as much time at work as possible.

6. Notes on the second section might be:
   a) Happiness often depends on feeling wealthier than others.
   b) People believe that leisure = happiness, so working longer to get extra goods won’t lead to happiness.

   These points could summarised as:
   Another explanation Penec presents is that happiness is often dependent on a comparison with others, so that if neighbours are also getting richer there is no apparent
improvement. A further factor relates to leisure, which is widely equated with happiness. Consequently the idea of increasing workload to be able to purchase more goods or services is not going to result in greater happiness.

7. The entire section of your essay which makes use of this source is as follows:

Penec (2003) argues that although Western economies have expanded since the 1950s, there has been no parallel growth in happiness. Surveys indicate that rich people generally say they are happier than poor people, but it appears that although individuals may become happier society as a whole does not. One possible answer is that people soon become accustomed to improvements and so do not appreciate them.

Another explanation Penec presents is that happiness is often dependent on a comparison with others, so that if neighbours are also getting richer there is no apparent improvement. A further factor relates to leisure, which is widely equated with happiness. Consequently the idea of increasing workload to be able to purchase more goods or services is not going to result in greater happiness.

The reference section at the end of the essay should include the following:

COMPARE CLASSROOM LEARNING WITH INTERNET-BASED TEACHING. IS THE LATTER LIKELY TO REPLACE THE FORMER?

Since the late 1990s internet-based teaching (also known as e-education) has emerged as a potential rival to traditional classroom learning. It normally involves having access to a secure site on the internet where a graded series of lessons are available, and which have assignments sent and returned by email. Although on-line courses are now offered by many institutions, it is by no means clear that they offer real advantages compared to classroom education. Little research has been done so far on their effectiveness, but this essay sets out to examine the arguments on both sides and attempts to draw conclusions from them.

Two main advantages of internet use in education are put forward. Firstly, it is seen as more economical, in that once a course is prepared, it can be used by large numbers of students. The savings made by not having to employ so many teachers should be reflected in cheaper course fees. The second benefit is convenience; instead of having to attend classes at fixed times and places, students are free to study when they choose and progress at their own pace. Furthermore, by studying from home there is no need to travel to the college or university, saving both time and money. A student living in a small town in China, for example, can now study a course at an American college without the worry of travelling, accommodation or homesickness.

Despite the considerations mentioned above, classroom learning shows no signs of being replaced by e-learning. It seems that face-to-face contact with a teacher is still widely regarded as the best way for students to make progress, despite the expense and inconvenience involved. Not only the personal contact with a teacher, but also the support and encouragement gained from being
part of a class may be one reason for this. Membership of a group may also create a useful spirit of competition, which stimulates learning.

Given the increasing pressure on university places in many countries, internet-based teaching is often seen as a convenient development. However, e-learning eliminates personal contact and travel from education, which are possibly the aspects many students value. Sitting at home working on a computer may be economical, but clearly cannot replace the social experience of attending courses. However, there are many people who are unable, either through work or family commitments, or due to lack of funds, to go to classes, and who would clearly find internet learning beneficial. On-line courses can also be used to support taught courses, for instance by providing access to extra materials. In many ways these kinds of courses are similar to ‘universities of the air’, such as Britain’s Open University, which have developed distance learning so successfully in the last 40 years.

Faced by growing demand for university places, more institutions are likely to develop on-line courses, but the apparent benefits of e-learning may be less than are generally believed. Students seem to value the personal contact of the classroom highly, despite its cost and inconvenience. There may be a role for internet-based courses to supplement teacher-taught ones, and certainly for people with other commitments they will be the only practical option. There is an urgent need for research on the effectiveness of this type of learning, which should help maximise its advantages in the future.

(Approximately 550 words)
1. Read the essay carefully and then decide which of the headings below match each of the paragraphs 1–7.

A. The impact of education   E. Other factors
B. Discussion/example   F. Introduction – definitions
C. Introduction – aims and overview   G. Limits of education
D. Conclusion

EDUCATION IS THE MOST IMPORTANT FACTOR IN NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT – DISCUSS.

1. Education must be considered on several different levels, so that today most Western countries are concerned with provision from nursery to higher education, while developing countries attempt to deliver basic education (e.g. reading and writing) to their people. ‘National development’ will be defined in this essay as the development of a country’s economy, since this is most commonly seen as the function of education provided by the state. For example, many European countries began providing primary education for all citizens in the late nineteenth century, in the phase of early industrialisation.

2. This paper attempts to evaluate the importance of these varying levels of educational provision in encouraging economic growth, compared to other factors such as national culture, natural resources and government. The role of education in fostering development will be examined first, and then other factors affecting growth will be considered.

3. At its simplest, education sets out to teach literacy and numeracy. People who can read and count are capable of being trained for many roles in the industrial or service sectors, as well as learning by themselves. Even in the simplest economies, dependent on agriculture, the education of women has been shown to lead to dramatic improvements in family welfare. In more developed economies further skills are required, such as languages, engineering and computing. Good education does not merely teach people how to function passively, but provides them with the skills to ask questions and therefore make improvements. At university level, education is closely involved in research which leads to technical and social advances.

4. Yet education does not operate in a vacuum: cultural, religious, legal and other factors all influence the rate of economic growth. Soviet Russia, for
example, had an advanced educational system, but many graduates were under-employed due to the restrictions of the political system. Similar situations exist in many countries today because of political restraints on the economy which prevent fast enough expansion to create sufficient jobs. Clearly, development requires efficient and honest government to encourage a dynamic economy.

5. A strong work ethic, as found in the USA or Japan, also aids growth. In such societies children are brought up to believe that both the individual and society will benefit from hard work. Natural resources such as oil are another consideration. Brunei, for instance, previously a poor country reliant on fishing, today has one of the highest per capita GDPs in the world. A clear and effective legal system also encourages development.

6. It is difficult to think of a situation where education has been the principal agent in fostering growth. For example, in the world's first industrial revolution, which occurred in eighteenth-century Britain, the majority of people were still illiterate (some pioneer industrialists themselves could not read or write). It seems that the availability of capital through the banking system, and a secure political and legal environment were more crucial in this case.

7. However, despite these considerations, education clearly has an important part to play in developing the skills and abilities of the people. Ultimately, they are the most important resource a country possesses, and their education is a priority for all successful states.

(Approximately 600 words)

2. Underline all the conjunctions in the essay and list them in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Addition</th>
<th>Result</th>
<th>Reason</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Opposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Writing Tests

These tests can be used to assess different aspects of writing performance. The accuracy tests (1 and 3) check the use of particular word classes such as conjunctions or prepositions. Students having difficulties with, for example, articles, should look at the relevant unit in Part 3. The second test assesses cohesion and test 4 is a comparison. They can be used in the classroom or for self-assessment.

WRITING TEST 1

(Accuracy)

Read the text for gist and then complete it by writing one word in each gap.

Most overseas students who come to study
a) . . . . . . . . . . English-speaking countries find that their first b) . . . . . . . . . . is listening. Understanding c) . . . . . . . . . . many forms of spoken English is more d) . . . . . . . . . . than they expected.

e) . . . . . . . . . ., after a month f) . . . . . . . . . . two, the majority find that their listening g) . . . . . . . . . ., and their next concern is speaking. This skill is more difficult to practise, so improvement h) . . . . . . . . . . to be slower. But i) . . . . . . . . . . three or four months most students find that j) . . . . . . . . . . can function quite k) . . . . . . . . . . in terms of shopping and travelling.

A l) . . . . . . . . . . area of difficulty is writing, which is possibly the m) . . . . . . . . . . difficult skill to master, n) . . . . . . . . . . it is more impersonal than oral/aural skills and depends o) . . . . . . . . . . the student learning a complex series of conventions. This explains p) . . . . . . . . . . many students find it q) . . . . . . . . . . to attend r) . . . . . . . . . . intensive course in academic English s) . . . . . . . . . . they begin t) . . . . . . . . . . university studies.

WRITING TEST 2

(Cohesion)

The parts of sentences below make two paragraphs which compare speaking with writing. Some parts are already numbered. Fill in the remaining numbers. Use internal clues and punctuation to help you find the correct order.

SPEAKING AND WRITING

1) When we speak, it is normally to one or . . . . . . . . . . to study our listeners’ faces for expressions which tell
Writing Tests

... for example agreement, or amusement.
... they often find the situation stressful.

3) As we speak, we are able
... For most people, speaking feels like a natural activity,
... a small number of people, who are often well known
to us.
... If their expressions show incomprehension
... us their reaction to what we are saying;
... though if they have to make a formal speech
... we will probably restate what we are saying.
... Writers cannot check if the readers understand, or are
interested
to avoid the dangers of being misunderstood by
readers
... who cannot look puzzled to

1) Writing, however, is much more like speaking to
... Unless we are writing a letter to a friend
... This is the reason why writing is more difficult than
... make the writer explain what he means again.
... in what they are writing.
... we have no way of knowing who may read our words.
... It also explains why writing must be as clear and
simple as possible,
... speaking, and often uses a more formal style.
... an unknown audience.

WRITING TEST 3

(Accuracy)

Read the text for gist and then complete it by writing one word in each gap.

All students need a) ................. to live, so finding
a suitable place is likely to be a priority when they arrive
to start a new course. Apart b) ................. the
minority c) ................. live with their parents, there
are only two d) of accommodation which are generally affordable.

e) all universities provide f) of residence, which can help new students

g) friends and develop a social life. They can be a h) choice, usually being
close to other university facilities, i) some may find that they are noisy, expensive and have j)
small rooms.

The alternative is to rent k) house or flat from a private landlord with a group of other students.
l) kind of shared accommodation m) offer greater independence and privacy, and can n) be more economical.
However, it does mean taking o) more responsibility, p) bills need paying and
the rooms have to q) cleaned.

Wherever students choose to live, several things are r) A quiet place to work, a sense of
security and s) environment that allows
t) to sleep properly all contribute to
academic success.

WRITING TEST 4

(Comparison)

Study the information in the table comparing two cities, which both have good universities. Use it to write a report on which would be the most suitable location for an overseas student planning a one-year course. (About 200 words.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Borchester</th>
<th>Rowborough</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Population</td>
<td>220,000</td>
<td>1,560,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summer climate</td>
<td>Warm and wet</td>
<td>Cool and quite dry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winter climate</td>
<td>Cool and windy</td>
<td>Cold and wet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City type</td>
<td>Old cathedral city with modern service industries</td>
<td>19th century industrial city with modern mixed industries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terrain</td>
<td>Flat, lots of parks</td>
<td>Hilly with several lakes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost of accommodation</td>
<td>Quite high</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public transport</td>
<td>Bus service not very good</td>
<td>Buses and trams, both good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main advantages</td>
<td>Relaxed atmosphere</td>
<td>Good range of shops and sports facilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main drawbacks</td>
<td>University campus is 6 kms from city centre</td>
<td>High rates of crime in some areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance from capital</td>
<td>230 kms</td>
<td>125 kms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Providing answers for a writing course is less clear cut than for other language areas. In some exercises there is only one possible answer, but in other cases several possibilities exist. Teachers need to use common sense, and accept any reasonable answer. In the case of exercises where students can choose their own topic and it is therefore impossible to provide an answer, students still appreciate having a model answer, and so some have been included.

Part 1 – The Writing Process

1.1 Background to Writing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>notes</th>
<th>to record reading or lectures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>report</td>
<td>to describe something a student has conducted, e.g. an experiment/a survey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>project</td>
<td>research conducted either individually or in group on subject chosen by student(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essay</td>
<td>piece of writing used to assess coursework/subject chosen by teacher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thesis/dissertation</td>
<td>long piece of writing on subject chosen by student for final assessment in Master’s/PhD course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>article/paper</td>
<td>writing published in academic journal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2bi abstract  
2bii acknowledgements  
2biii appendix  
2biv bibliography  
2bv case study  
2bvi preface  
2bvii index  

4a title  
4b sub-heading  
4c phrase  
4d sentence  
4e paragraph  

5 Texts are divided into paragraphs to separate the main points and make them easier to read. Paragraphs usually vary in length from three to eight sentences.

para 2 begins: The first issue to . . .  
para 3 begins: Diversification must also . . .  
para 4 begins: A further consideration . . .
1.2 Avoiding Plagiarism

1 (a), (b), (d) and (e) are plagiarism.

2 (a), (b) and (c) are plagiarised, (d) is acceptable.

   NB (c) uses paraphrasing but contains a quotation not marked by quotation marks.

3 Acceptable: some vocabulary kept from original/new sentence structure/use of summary

   Plagiarised: many phrases retained from original/minor paraphrasing/identical sentence structure

1.3 From Titles to Outlines

1a Define give a definition
   Outline describe the main features

1b Compare examine the similarities
   Contrast look at the differences

1c Evaluate consider the value

1d Trace describe the main features
   Illustrate give examples

2 Describe give a detailed account
   Examine divide into sections and discuss each critically
   State give a clear and simple account
   Suggest make a proposal and support it
   Summarise deal with a complex subject by giving the main points

4 (Sample plan)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Evaluate the effects of mergers in the motor industry in the last ten years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>definition of merger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>background to motor industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>outline of essay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main body</td>
<td>case studies of two mergers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>discussion of benefits of each merger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conclusion</td>
<td>summary of findings: value of mergers depends on quality of management in merged firm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 The following sections are the most important:

5a An analysis of candidates for membership before 2020/A summary of the enlargement of the EU from 1975 to now.

5b A study of major privatisations in the UK/A discussion of the benefits achieved by privatisation.
5c A report on the spread of TB worldwide/A case study showing how TB relates to social class.

5d A report on the development of children who remain at home until five/A discussion comparing speaking ability in both groups of children.

5e The benefits of using books/The drawbacks of internet sources.

6a Identify means to select and explain. The writer must identify the chief reasons for poverty in the Chinese countryside.

6b Calculate means to make a mathematical estimate. Here the writer must look at patterns of coffee consumption and attempt to calculate how much difference a price decrease would make.

6c Classify means to put into categories. Different types of desert need to be described, and then methods of control should be proposed.

1.4 Evaluating Texts

2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>opinion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>opinion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>fact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>fact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>opinion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>fact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>fact and opinion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5a Factual and mainly true until last sentence (In the future . . .) which is an opinion.

5b Most sentences mix facts and opinions. Most of the facts are untrue, e.g. the population is not two million. Clearly an unreliable source!

5c Although this begins with a generally accepted fact, the second sentence contains a totally untrue statement, and the speculation built on this is absurd!

5d Mainly factual, except for an opinion in the first sentence (significant). The penultimate sentence is speculation.

1.5 Understanding Purpose and Register

2a amuse/entertain

2b inform/persuade

2c inform

3 Academic English is found in academic journals and books.

Archaic English is generally found in books published in the nineteenth century or earlier.

Formal English is found in legal documents and similar.

Jargon is often found in specialist publications.
Journalistic English is found in newspapers.  
Literary English may be found in poems, plays and novels.

4a academic  
4b formal  
4c jargon  
4d literary  
4e archaic  
4f journalistic  
5a euphemism  
5b metaphor  
5c proverb  
5d paradox  
5e analogy  
5f idiom  
5g irony  
5h hyperbole

6a (hyperbole) Obesity is a growing problem in modern society.  
6b (irony) High consumption of sugar and fats contribute towards it.  
6c (idiom) Overweight people should attempt to become fitter.  
6d (idiom) They need to make the effort to take regular exercise.  
6e (proverb) Ultimately, they need to take responsibility for their own health.

1.6 Selecting Key Points

2 Many possibilities, but should include the idea of financial success and medical developments, e.g. Millionaire American medical inventor.

3 1. In many parts of the world hospitals have none of the modern health equipment . . .  
   2. Freeplay Energy. . . is planning to introduce a range of medical equipment which can . . .  
   3. All the machines will be of simple, robust design which will use either solar power . . .

4 1. Lord May . . . has claimed that the world is facing a wave of extinctions similar to the five mass extinctions of past ages.
   2. He calculates that the current rate of extinction is between 100 and 1,000 times faster than the historical average.
3. . . . the present situation is caused by human consumption of plants, which has resulted in a steady increase in agriculture and a consequent reduction in habitat for animals.

4. Lord May also pointed out that it was very difficult to make accurate estimates as nobody knew how many species of animals lived on the planet.

5a . . . bottled water costs 700 times more than tap water, but is often of inferior quality.

. . . although bottled water advertising often associated the product with sport and health there was no truth in this link.

Labels on bottled water often referred to ‘spring’ and ‘natural water’, which were meaningless phrases.

5b Now the genetic code of the plague bacterium has been ‘read’ by scientists; a total of 465 million ‘letters’ of DNA. They believe that this will help in the development of vaccines for the plague . . .

1.7 Note-making

1 to keep a record of reading/lectures
to revise for exams
to help remember main points
to prepare for essays

2 Before: listening/reading/selecting
After: writing/speaking


Computer passwords
generally used to protect sites from hackers

Drawbacks
a) office workers must remember av. 12 passwords —> most use same one
b) many use simple words —> hackers can easily crack
c) expense of supplying replacements for forgotten passwords
d) need to write down new passwords reduces security

Solutions
Passfaces (Real User)
a) user remembers set of photos of faces in order – selected from random pattern
b) works because people can recognise large number faces
c) more secure – cannot be passed on
d) more easily remembered

Malaria increasing esp. resistant strains

350 m+ cases p.a. (4x level 1970s)

Causes:

a) increase in poverty > less money for sanitation
b) increased travel (migrants/tourists)
c) overuse of antibiotics

Vaccine? – difficult because of different strains but in trials


1815 Mt Tambora (Indonesia) exploded

100 km³ debris $\rightarrow$ atmosphere $\rightarrow$ affected weather around world

1816 NE USA and Europe cold summers destroyed harvests > prices rose > more emigrants to west of USA

1.8 Paraphrasing

2 (b) is the better paraphrase (in (a) changes in the weather and the region to the south are not as precise as a long dry period and the mountains at the river’s source).

4 (A number of possibilities are acceptable here. These are suggestions.)

4b It started in France and Germany, but accelerated in the United States.

4c There Henry Ford modified the moving assembly line from the Chicago meat industry to car manufacturing, thereby inventing mass production.

5b After the Second World War the development of ‘planned obsolescence’ by the industry encouraged customers to buy new cars more often than they needed to by increasing the frequency of model changes.

5c Later, from the 1970s, environmental criticism of the industry focused on the production of inefficient models which used too much fuel, contributing to global warming.

6b Some of the strongest brands in the world are today owned by the industry.

6c Many major car companies, however, struggle with falling profits and stagnant markets.

7 (Again, there is a range of possibilities, of which the following is an example.)

The expansion of contemporary capitalism matches the rise of the automobile industry. After starting in Germany and France, it accelerated in the United States. There the moving assembly line was modified by Henry Ford from the Chicago meat industry to manufacturing cars: the invention of mass production. General Motors dominated the world’s car companies in the 1920s, with help from the managerial theories of Alfred Sloan. The development of ‘planned obsolescence’ by the industry began after the Second World War, by which the frequency of model changes encouraged customers to buy new cars more often than necessary. Environmental criticism of the industry from the 1970s focused on the contribution to global warming made by the production of inefficient models which used too much petrol. At this time increasingly militant
trades unions defended their members’ jobs. Although some of the world’s strongest brands are today owned by the industry, many major motor companies struggle with declining profits and static markets.

8. (Sample paraphrase)

Antarctica was unexplored until the twentieth century, and still has a tiny population in relation to its size. Yet it suffers from various pollution problems which have been described in a report by a New Zealand government agency. The low temperatures there impede the usual pattern of decay, though compared with most parts of the world it remains in pristine condition. Some long-established scientific bases have large piles of garbage around them.

Few people realise that Antarctica has very little precipitation, so that in the current context of global warming the ice tends to reveal the rubbish that previously was slowly being buried under snow. For more than a decade the nations involved in Antarctic research have respected an agreement to repatriate their garbage, and this should gradually solve the problem. But there are a few items which will not be cleared up, since they belonged to the early period of exploration and have now acquired historic interest.

1.9 Summary Writing

1 Features of good summaries should include: selection of main features/accuracy (i.e. not distorting the original)/clear expression.

2 making detailed notes from sections of journal articles and books

making global summaries of writers’ ideas and theses

3

3b key points

3c use your own words

3d order of ideas where necessary

3e important points

4 (a) is the best summary

(b) fails to describe the experiment

(c) describes neither the experiment nor its significance

6 (Possible answers)

6a weather forecasting methods

6b blossoming of local tree

6c castor (for dry)

6d the monsoon can be quite accurately forecast by the time of the tree’s flowering
Indian scientists are checking ancient weather forecasting methods, such as the old saying which links the date of the monsoon to the flowering time of a local tree. This has been used by farmers to select either peanuts (for wet conditions) or castor (for dry). Dr Kanani of Gujarat Agricultural University has found that the monsoon can be quite accurately forecast using the time of the tree’s flowering.

Recent Indian research confirms the accuracy of an ancient method of forecasting the monsoon’s arrival used by farmers to choose crops.

It is planned to move South Korea’s capital from Seoul to a central site by 2012, at a cost of $45 billion. Although Seoul is crowded and too near the border, critics claim that this scheme will be too expensive and take too long. Businesses are unlikely to move away from Seoul when the government does. Other countries have experienced severe problems with capital relocation.

Source C claims that tourism creates a significant amount of employment which provides a welcome alternative to traditional work such as farming. However, source D points out that many of these jobs are insecure and poorly paid, being likely to contribute to social tensions. This negative view is partly supported by source E, who insists that despite some positive examples the more common experience of developing countries is for tourism to exacerbate social ills such as crime and prostitution.
1.11 Planning Essays

1 Other possible ideas: tourism helps poorer countries develop pressure to offer ‘new’ countries tourist industry vulnerable to political/natural disasters package holidays helped to popularise foreign travel huge potential demand from developing countries

2 Most suitable structure would be based on time, since the title asks for study of past and present.

3 (Sample plan)
Main body: ii) package holidays helped to popularise foreign travel iii) tourism helped poorer countries to develop iv) constant demand for new destinations and new types of holiday v) danger of damaging environment through growth of visitors

Conclusion: industry has grown rapidly but faces variety of threats

4a For and against
4b Comparison
4c Time
4d For and against
4e Comparison

5 Main body: i) benefits of TV advertising: reach large audience, have strong impact ii) drawbacks: expensive and can be ignored iii) benefits of newspaper advertising: flexible, cheap, focused iv) drawbacks: static

Conclusion: TV more effective in reaching large numbers but newspapers probably better for specialised markets

7 Introduction
• In 1985 12% of young people went to university in the UK. Now the figure is over 30%. Similar growth has been experienced in many countries, developed and developing.
• Outline of essay: benefits and drawbacks of expansion.

Main body
1. Benefits of expansion
• Modern economies are based on knowledge. Therefore, every country needs to educate its workforce as highly as possible to compete with other economies.
• University education may help students from poorer families to move into a higher social position.

2. Drawbacks of expansion
• As student numbers rise, standards fall. Classrooms become more crowded, and overworked teachers are less able to give students personal attention.
• Because increasing numbers of young people are gaining a first degree, their degrees are worth less. It is now necessary to have a second degree to compete in the labour market.
• Recent research (Jackson et al.) shows that employers are looking for personal skills rather than educational qualifications.
• The average student in Britain now leaves university with debts of £15,000.

3. Discussion
Higher education does not benefit everyone. Advantages have to be balanced against time and money invested.

4. Conclusion
Not clear that numbers in higher education can be expanded indefinitely.

1.12 Organising paragraphs
3 1. Topic
2. Definition
3. Example
4. Detail
5. Detail
6. Reason
4 Topic: London has been . . .
   Restatement: For many centuries . . .
   Reason: Its dominance is due . . .
   Example: The Romans were the first . . .
   Information: Over 500 years ago . . .
5 1. Topic 1: An English zoo . . .
2. Topic 2: But when the English . . .
3. Example: Even simple words . . .
4. Reason: The zoo realised that . . .
5. Information: Consequently, the keepers . . .
Model answers for (6–9)

6 1. . . . was developed in the 19th century.
   2. . . . to isolate, punish and reform.
   3. . . . there has been a steep rise in the number of prisoners.
   4. . . . as being ‘universities of crime’.
   5. . . . how effective prisons are today.

7 1. Prisons appear to offer society three benefits.
   2. Firstly, they punish prisoners by depriving them of freedom.
   3. In addition, offenders are segregated from society so they cannot commit further crimes.
   4. Finally, they offer the possibility of reform through training programmes.

8 1. Prisons, however, appear to many observers to be failing in the twenty-first century.
   2. In most countries the prison population is rising steadily.
   3. Furthermore, many prisoners return to prison after their release; they are repeat offenders.
   4. This suggests that few prisons offer effective reform programmes.
   5. In addition, prison conditions can often be brutal and degrading.

9 Prisons have existed in their present form for about 200 years and are clearly necessary to deter and punish criminals. However, they are often no longer successful in this aim, as shown by the steady increase in the prison population, and the rise of re-offending. It would appear that more emphasis should be placed on reform and education, as well as examining alternatives to prison, such as community work.

1.13 Organising the Main Body

  1a For and against/type 1
  1b Comparison
  1c Development

  2 Structure: For and against/type 1
   1. many older students have lost interest in learning and disrupt classes
   2. problem students waste everybody’s time, including their own
   3. some students are more suited to work which doesn’t require qualifications
   4. in future, almost all jobs will require academic skills
   5. if they left at 14, students would be unlikely to find proper jobs
   6. effort should be made in primary schools to prevent pupils falling behind
3 1. Literature review – A synopsis of recent published research in this area
   2. Aims and methods – Aims of the survey and how the researcher conducted it
   3. Findings – A report of what the survey found, with statistical analysis
   4. Case study – An extensive study of two students...
   5. Discussion – Comparisons of the advantages and disadvantages that students mentioned...

5 (Possible answers)
   Para 2  The main factor
   In the first place
   Then
   Finally,
   Para 3  Turning to the subject of
   In the first place
   Secondly
   Lastly,
   Para 4  Another important area
   Firstly
   in addition

1.14 Introductions
   1  optional: a/c
      usual: d/e/g
   2a  v
   2b  i
   2c  iv
   2d  vi
   2e  ii
   2f  iii
   4a  Higher Education
   4b  depending on the country chosen, recent developments/debate on HE could be mentioned
   4c  reference could be made to rising student numbers/debate about costs (who should pay)/value of research for economic development
   4d  essay could focus geographically on one or two countries, either similar or different economically
historically the discussion could be limited to the past 10/20/50 years

4e plan will depend on decisions made in (c) above

5 Model answer

The last two decades have seen a steady increase in demand for higher (i.e. university-level) education worldwide. Rising costs in this sector have put pressure on national budgets, causing many countries to attempt to shift some of the cost to the students, often in the form of loans. A degree generally remains the key to better jobs and opportunities, yet if students have to pay a greater share of the cost this will discriminate against poorer families. This essay examines the question of access to university by comparing the situation in a developed country, the United States, with that of a developing country, Turkey.

1.15 Conclusions

1a ii
1b iii
1c v
1d iv
1e ii
1f i
1g ii
1h iv

2 Neither conclusion is complete – synthesis is required

2a Summary of discussion/reference to related research

2b Limitations of study/proposals for future research

3 (Suggested order – variations possible)

Summary of main findings
Reference to how these findings compare with other studies or Implications of the findings
Limitations of research
Proposals for further research

4 Model answer

Summary: The results suggest that culture was only one factor in determining successful adaptation. Older students, those with previous experience of living abroad, and those with better language proficiency all seemed to adapt better.

Implications: The findings suggest that students should if possible study abroad when they are more mature, and that they should aim for a higher level of language ability before they leave home.
Limitations: Although this was quite a large survey only about 30% of overseas students at the university were involved. Some national groups were under-represented.

Proposals: As we are not aware of other previous research in this field, it would be useful to replicate the study in another university, possibly with a different cross-section of overseas students, to see if similar results emerged.

5 Model answer

It has been shown that despite the distinct benefits that on-line learning can bring, especially cheapness and flexibility, these are not always sufficient to dissuade students from attending classroom lessons. They clearly value membership of a group and personal contact with a teacher. There is a sense that internet teaching may be seen as second-class education, where the student is isolated from fruitful contact with his or her peers, and a more useful approach may be to view e-learning as a helpful add-on to taught courses, rather than an avenue to be followed exclusively.

1.16 Rewriting and Proof-reading

4 Model answer

Despite this, there are significant differences between the structure and workings of the higher education system in the two countries. This essay attempts to compare the admission procedures, length of courses for first and higher degrees, teaching methods, assessment procedures and systems of financial support for students. These areas have been selected as being of central importance for a valid comparison.

5a v
5b iv
5c vii
5d ii
5e x
5f vi
5g i
5h ix
5i iii
5j viii
6a 50 years
6b its citizens/contribute to
6c teaches people/knowledge
6d whether it is
6e There was
6f depends on educational level
6g the highest
7 (Corrected sections in italics)

There are many similarities between the UK and Taiwan, for example course fees and assessment. Firstly, both UK and Taiwanese universities charge fees to students, and course fees in the UK are as expensive as those in Taiwan. In addition, teaching methods are very similar in both countries: students have to attend lectures and seminars. Moreover, they have the same system to assess students, who are examined at the end of each semester. Nevertheless, there are two main differences: how students can enter a university and what percentage of students are in higher education. There are twice as many students in higher education in Taiwan as in the UK.

Part 2 – Elements of Writing

2.1 Argument

3 Problem: Obesity is increasing rapidly in most countries.

Cause A: . . . some doctors blame a sedentary lifestyle.

Argument against cause A: This does not explain why only certain people suffer from this condition . . .

Cause B: Another theory is that a high-fat diet . . . is to blame.

Conclusion in favour of B: Recent research has shown that most obesity sufferers do eat this unhealthy diet.

4 Model argument

Demand for university places is currently growing, which frequently leads to overcrowding of student facilities. It has been argued that fees should be increased to reduce demand for places, but this would discriminate against students from poorer families. Another proposal is for the government to pay for the expansion of universities, but against this is the view that this would unfairly benefit the minority who in any case go on to earn higher salaries. A fairer solution might be for the government to subsidise the fees of the poorest students.

2.2 Cause and Effect

3a leads to/results in
3b Because of/Owing to/Due to
3c leads to/causes/results in/produces
3d therefore/ consequently/which is why
3e led to/resuited in
4a because of/due to/owing to
4b because/since
4c consequently/therefore
4d due to/owing to/because of
4e because of/due to/owing to
4f so/therefore/thus/consequently

5 Model answer
This results in people having more money to spend, and so leads to higher spending on goods and services. The increased demand for goods and services results in lower unemployment, and consequently the government has a higher income from taxation and spends less on social security.

2.3 Cohesion
2 they
this
the former
the latter
these
3 villagers
kerosene and diesel
not being affordable
villagers
kerosene and diesel
from kerosene and diesel
4a They
4b he
4c them
4d This
4e his
4f he
5A a It
5A b her
5A c She
5A d him
5A e They/She
5A f Their
5A g she
5A h his
5B a Their
5B b their
5B c They
5B d their
5B e Their
5B f the former

2.4 Comparisons
3a slightly more expensive than
3b considerably/significantly cheaper than
3c slightly cheaper than
3d considerably/significantly more expensive than
7a least
7b slightly
7c nearly/almost
7d as
7e most
7f than
7g half
7h as
8a most
8b less
8c more
8d than
8e slightly
8f on
8g as
8h smallest/least
9a shows
9b longest/highest
9c longest
9d  On  
9e  than  
9f  the  
9g  slightly  

10. Model answer

The highest rate is found in Greece (8.3 per day), and the lowest is in Norway (1.7). Although many countries are close to the EU average of 4.5, the northern Scandinavian countries all have low rates of smoking.

11. Model answer

Alcohol consumption in Europe averages 11.1 litres per adult per year, but within this there are wide variations. The highest consumption is found in France (14.1), while the Norwegians only consume one third of this figure (4.8).

2.5 Definitions

2a  instrument/device  
2b  organs  
2c  organisation/corporation  
2d  material  
2e  behaviour  
2f  system/process  
2g  period/time  
2h  system  
3a  process  refine liquids  
3b  person/doctor  mental problems  
3c  qualification/degree  a dissertation/thesis  
3d  body/organisation  its members’ interests  
3e  disease  a mosquito-borne parasite  
3f  cereal/grain  making flour  
4a  a failed project  
4b  development  
4c  electronic commerce  
4d  attachment  
4e  self-brightening  

Model answers

5a  capital punishment  execution carried out by state, often by hanging
Answers

5b  department store  large shop which sells most types of goods in different areas
5c  post-natal depression  feeling of sadness experienced by some mothers after birth

2.6 Discussion

3  Model answer for title (a)
   pros: more security for children with mother, mother is able to take more care of home
   cons: children have less chance to mix with others, mothers have more limited role

Title: Instead of going out to work, mothers should stay at home and look after their children until they are at least 5 – discuss.

a)  Introduction  the growth in women’s participation in the workforce
    – increased use of nurseries

b)  Advantages  more social mixing for children
    higher income for family
    more varied roles for women

c)  Disadvantages  less security for children
    women have to deal with career and home

d)  Conclusion  depends on individual situation

5  Model answers

It has been argued that staying at home gives children security, but the evidence suggests that there are more social advantages to attending a nursery.

While fast food is often claimed to be unhealthy, there appears to be little firm evidence to support this.

7  Model answer

Lomborg’s definition of air quality is limited to sulphur dioxide, and fails to take into account more recent threats.

8  Model answer

pros: increases standard of living, reduces time spent working, people live longer
cons: creates pollution, damages environment, causes stress and mental problems

9  Model answer using pattern (2i)

a)  Introduction: definition of industrial development, examples of process

b)  Advantages: more leisure time, better medical facilities, more choices

c)  Disadvantages: development destroys countryside, causes pollution and stress

d)  Discussion/conclusion: quality of life has improved due to industrialisation but damage has been caused on several levels
2.7 Examples

2a e.g./such as
2b A case in point
2c particularly/especially (for example/instance also possible)
2d for instance/for example
2e such as/e.g.

Model answers

3a A number of sports such as football/motor racing . . .
3b Certain twentieth-century inventions, for example television and antibiotics, . . .
3c In recent years many women, e.g. Indira Gandhi . . .
3d . . . most car makers, for instance Toyota/Volkswagen . . .
3e Certain diseases, particularly malaria/Aids . . .
3f Many musical instruments such as guitars/ violins . . .
3g Several mammals, e.g. pandas/tigers . . .

4 customs: holidays and festivals, ways of greeting people
everyday patterns: types of shop, shop opening times
inevitable differences: language, currency
rapid changes of mood: depression, elation
relatively short period: two/three months
some aspects of their new surroundings: freedom, independence

5a His mother’s sister, i.e. his aunt . . .
5b When the liquid reached boiling point, namely 140 degrees . . .
5c It appears that Candlemas day, that is, February 2nd, . . .
5d The company’s overheads, in other words, the fixed costs, . . .

2.8 Generalisations

Model answers

2b Flowers are usually a suitable present.
2c Cities are often affected by pollution.
2d Fresh fruit can be good for health.
2e Television has become an important medium.

3 Many international students attend British universities. Most welcome the chance to meet students from around the world, and all are pleased to have a chance to improve their English.
4a Unemployment in 1989 was higher than in 1979 or 1999.
4b Inflation was higher in 1979 than in 1989 or 1999.
4c House prices rose dramatically between 1979 and 1989.
4d Interest rates were slightly higher in 1989 than in 1979, and were much lower in 1999.
5a be over 60
5b double by 2100
5c young populations/a small proportion of over-60s
5d fall in its total population/a doubling of the population over 60
5e have a significant population of older people/a larger proportion of over 60s

Model answers
6a Two common dreams are being chased and falling.
6b A majority have dreamed about the dead.
6c Dreaming about the future is quite common.
6d Food dreams may be linked to dieting.
6e A minority dream of finding money.

2.9 Numbers
2a 50
2b 100
2c 400

3a Few people . . .
3b They received scores . . .
3c She made various . . .
3d He found dozens . . .
3e They made several . .

Model answers
4a Three quarters of the people interviewed said that they supported the president.
4b The average number of students on the course has been 22.
4c The price of petrol has increased eight times/eightfold since 1965.
4d Two thirds of the students in the group were women.
4e The new type of train halved the journey time to Madrid.
4f The majority of the students studied law.
4g There has been a 50% rise in the numbers applying to this department this year.
5b The numbers doubled every year between 1998 and 2000.
5c More than twice as many students complete their first degree course in Britain, compared with Italy.
5d Tap water is much cheaper than bottled water.
5e Only a small percentage/proportion of women believed that they had the same rights as men. Over a third complained that they had far fewer rights.
5f Life expectancy for men in the UK rose by 50% during the twentieth century.
5g The cost of the same operation varies by 50% between hospitals in . . .
5h The area of forest in England fell by two-thirds between 1086 and 1870.

2.10 Opening Paragraphs
2 Model answer

It is now widely accepted that global warming, caused by increased use of fossil fuels, is taking place. The debate now centres on the best approach to the phenomenon. Some scientists argue for a reduction in the use of fossil fuels, but others maintain that this is impractical or uneconomic.

3a acceptable
3b too vague
3c acceptable
3d vague and overgeneralised

5 Model answer

a) In the past 50 years television has become one of the dominant influences on the upbringing of children. Most children watch it, and many spend several hours daily watching programmes specially made for children. There are, however, concerns that children are watching unsuitable programmes, and also that they are spending too long in front of the television and not taking part in more productive activities.

2.11 References and Quotations

2 (a), (d) and (e) need references

5 Model answers

5a Orwell (1940) stated that Dickens rarely writes directly about work. He claimed that most of Dickens’ characters, except David Copperfield, have shadowy occupations, and that Copperfield works in areas very similar to Dickens’ own experience.

5b Orwell pointed out that Dickens infrequently described his characters’ jobs clearly: ‘In Dickens’ novels anything in the nature of work happens off-stage. The only one of his heroes who has a plausible profession is David Copperfield . . . ’ (Orwell, 1940: pp. 54–5)
5c According to Orwell (1940), few of Dickens’ characters have a convincing profession, with the exception of David Copperfield, who follows Dickens’ own career. ‘With most of the others, the way they earn their living is very much in the background.’ (pp. 54–5)

8a alphabetically
8b i  author/date of publication/title/place of publication/publisher
8b ii  author/date of publication/title/editor/main title/place of publication/publisher
8b iii  author/title/URL/access date
8b iv  author/article title/journal name/volume/page number
8c book and journal titles
8d for titles of books (but not articles)
8e under the title of the publication

2.12 Restatement and Repetition
2a In other words, this may lead to . . .
2b . . . universities, i.e. coursework and examinations
2c That is to say, the distribution of wealth . . .
4a Every country has a unique structure for its education system.
4b Similarly, China has expanded its higher education.
4c There are two differences between the UK and China in terms of higher education. Firstly, the entrance system.
4d In Spain only 40% of students can find a job.
4e Students who graduate from secondary schools can send application forms to many universities.
4f Both UK and Chinese universities charge fees.
4g This essay will compare HE systems in the UK and China. Firstly, there are similar assessment methods.

5a a/c
5b d/e
5c b
5d g
Currently, fast food is growing in popularity. Fast food is food that people can buy or cook quickly. This essay examines the advantages and drawbacks of fast food. First, it is usually tasty. Most people who work in offices are very busy, so they do not have time to go home for lunch. But they can eat in McDonald’s restaurants. The second benefit of fast food is cheapness. As it is produced in large quantities, this means that the companies can keep costs down. As a result fast food is usually less expensive than a meal in a conventional restaurant.

2.13 Academic Style

Model answers

4a It is widely believed that the railways are deteriorating.
4b Serious crime, such as murder, is increasing.
4c The figures in that report are not reliable.
4d The second factor is that the majority of children in that district may become criminals.
4e There appears to be a significant risk of further strikes and disorder.
4f Women were enfranchised in 1994.
4g The Russian inflation led to poverty and disease.
4h A malaria vaccine may be discovered in the next 10 years.
4i There were two main causes of the American Revolution.

5a Currently, significant numbers of children are starting school at the age of four or less, whereas 30 years ago five was the normal age. There appear to be various reasons for the change; mothers, for example, need to rejoin the labour force. There are mixed views about the effects of this change on the children concerned. Jenkins (1989) claims that early school attendance causes social problems such as theft and drug taking. There seems to be considerable evidence to support his views and there may be an argument in favour of a state subsidy for women to stay at home with their children.

5b There appear to be two principal reasons for the growing traffic congestion. Firstly, public transport has become increasingly expensive relative to the falling cost of motoring. In addition, car ownership is much more convenient than using public transport. Together, these factors result in higher vehicle density.

2.14 Synonyms

Model answers

4a challenged/outcome/study
4b data or figures/demonstrate/increase
4c forecast/argument or debate
4d main disadvantage/method
4e focus/possibility
Answers

4f explain/idea or theory
4g topics/evaluated
4h structure/kept/targets/changed
4i reduce output/increase
4j tendency/accelerated
5 UK – British – this country
    agency – organisation – body
    advertising campaign – publicity programme – advertising blitz
    to raise – to improve
    British eating habits – regular hand washing
    to cut – reduction
6 firm’s plan
    cut expenditure or spending
    business intends or proposes
    earnings or salaries
    employees
    raised

2.15 Variation in Sentence Length

Model answers

2 Worldwide, enrolments in higher education are increasing. In developed countries
over half of all young people enter college, while similar trends are seen in China and
South America. This growth has put financial strain on state university systems, so that
many countries are asking students and parents to contribute. This leads to a debate
about whether students or society benefit from tertiary education.

3 It is widely recognised that a university degree benefits the individual, since
a graduate can expect to find a better job with a higher salary. In the USA the
average graduate will earn $1 million more in a lifetime than a non-graduate. Many
governments now expect students to pay a proportion of tuition costs, although it is
argued that this discriminates against poorer students. Some countries give grants
to students whose families have low incomes because their education is seen to be
beneficial for the nation as a whole.

4 China is one developing country (but not the only one) which has imposed fees on
students since 1997. The results have been surprising: enrolments, especially in the
most expensive universities, have continued to rise steeply, growing 200% overall
between 1997 and 2001. It seems in this case that higher fees attract rather than
discourage students, who see them as a sign of a good education. They compete more
fiercely for places, leading to the result that a place at a good college can cost $8000 per
year for fees and maintenance.
5 Developing countries are under the greatest financial pressure. They may also experience difficulties in introducing loan schemes for students, since the lack of private capital markets restricts the source of borrowing for governments, which are often unable to raise sufficient cheap funds, while a further restraint has been the high default rates by students unable to repay their loans.

2.16 **Visual Information**

1.1 dE
1.2 fB
1.3 aF
1.4 cC
1.5 bD
1.6 eA

Model answers
2a grew slightly
2b rose steadily
2c fell sharply
2d increased slightly
2e sharp rise
2f slight drop

3 (a) is better because it selects the most important details. (b) simply repeats the data on the chart.

Model answers
4a density
4b illustrates/shows
4c between
4d emptier/less crowded
4e role/part
4f since/because
4g tend
5a table
5b range/variety
5c marriage
5d Britain
5e rate
5f Iran
5g half
5h proportion/figure
5i result/consequence

Table 4 shows the gender balance in the School of Computing from 1996 to 2000. Between 1996 and 1998 the ratio of men to women was about 1:3, but in the next two years the proportion of women increased, so that in 2000 women accounted for nearly 40% of the total.

Part 3 – Accuracy In Writing

3.1 Abbreviations

6a Prime Minister/members of parliament/National Health Service
6b Information technology/and others
6c That is/World Trade Organization
6d Take note/Curricula vitarum/A4 size paper
6e Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development/United Kingdom
6f European Union/value added tax
6g Chief Executive Officer/research and development
6h Figure 4/Worldwide Web
6i World Health Organization/tuberculosis
6j Public Relations/$45,000
6k Genetically modified/for example
6l Professor/Master of Philosophy/Doctor of Philosophy

3.2 Academic Vocabulary

2a prediction
2b significant
2c varied
2d created
2e hypothetical
2f synthesis
2g significance
2h evaluated
2i correlation
2j analytical
3a indicate
3b definitive
3c generalisations/predictions
3d responded
3e analysed
3f variables
5a precise
5b theoretical
5c irrational
5d approximate
5e objective
5f irrelevant
5g concrete

3.3 Adverbs
4a Obviously/Clearly
4b Originally
4c Alternatively
4d Recently/lately
4e Similarly
4f Clearly/Obviously
6a slightly
6b substantially/significantly
6c dramatically
6d steadily
6e considerably/substantially/significantly
6f rapidly/quickly
6g substantially/considerably
6h rapidly
3.4 Articles

4a  –
4b  The/the
4c  –/–
4d  The/the
4e  –/the
4f  –/the
4g  The/the
4h  The/–
4i  –/the
4j  The/the
4k  the/–
4l  The/–
4m  the/the
4n  The/the

5a  a
5b  –
5c  the
5d  the
5e  the/a
5f  the
5g  the
5h  a
5i  the
5j  the
5k  the
5l  a
5m  a
5n  The
5o  the
5p  –
5q  The
5r  the
5s  the/a
3.5 Caution

2  (Others are possible)
   Modals: might/may/could/should
   Adverbs: often/usually/frequently/generally/occasionally/rarely/mainly
   Phrases: in general/by and large/it appears/it seems

3  Model answers

3a  Private companies tend to be . . .

3b  Computer manuals can be . . .

3c  Older students frequently perform better . . .

3d  Exploring space could be . . .

3e  English pronunciation is often . . .

3f  Global warming may cause . . .

3g  Science students tend to work harder . . .

3h  Concrete is usually . . .

4a  Charles was a rather insignificant king . . .

4b  The survey was quite a comprehensive . . .

4c  His second book had a rather hostile . . .

4d  . . . arthritis drugs are fairly expensive.

4e  The first-year students were quite fascinated . . .

6  Model answer

A team of American scientists may have found a way to reverse the ageing process. They fed diet supplements, usually found in health food shops, to elderly rats, which were then tested for memory and stamina. The animals tended to display more active behaviour after taking the supplements, and generally their memory improved. In addition, their appearance became rather more youthful and their appetite increased.

The researchers believe that this experiment is quite a clear indication of how the problems of old age may be overcome. They claim that in a few years’ time many people may be able to look forward to a fairly long and active retirement.
3.6 Confusing Pairs

2a quite
2b lose
2c affect
2d compliments
2e its
2f economic
2g accepted
3 (Others are correct)
3c economical
3d principles
3e Except
3h raise

3.7 Conjunctions

2a d
2b c
2c f
2d e
2e a
2f b
2g b
2h e
4 because (reason)
   for example (example)
   and (addition)
   But (opposition)
   so (result)
   while (addition)
   Firstly (time)
   and (addition)
   furthermore (addition)
5 (Others are possible)
8a While the government claimed that inflation was falling, the opposition said it was rising.

Despite the fact that the government claimed (that) inflation was falling, the opposition . . .
8b  This department must reduce expenditure, but it needs to install new computers.
   Although this department must reduce expenditure it needs . . .

Model answers
9a  In contrast to America, where gun ownership is common, guns are rare in Japan.
9b  Despite leaving school at the age of 14 he went on to own a chain of shops.
9c  The majority displayed a positive attitude to the proposal, but a minority rejected it.
9d  While the tutor insisted that the essay was easy, the students felt it was too difficult.
9e  Although the spring was cold and dry the summer was warm and wet.

3.8  Nationality Language
3  Model answer
Mexico is in central America.
The Mexican capital is Mexico City.
Mexicans speak Spanish.
5a  Chinese
5b  Russian
5c  Australia
5d  Spanish
5e  American
5f  Brazilians
5g  Iraqi
5h  Cubans
6  Model answers
Pablo Picasso came from Spain and painted pictures.
Bob Marley was a Jamaican musician.
Mahatma Gandhi was an Indian politician and philosopher.

3.9  Nouns and Adjectives
2a  safety – safe
2b  culture – cultural
2c  deep – depth
2d  health – healthy
3  high/reliable/hot
Answers

strength/confidence/truth
wide/probable/necessary
length/danger/relevance

4a strength
4b truth
4c probability
4d wide
4e necessary
4f relevance
4g danger
4h necessity
4i unreliable
4j Confidence

5a various – variety
5b analytical – analysis
5c available – availability
5d major – majority
5e precise – precision/unknown – knowledge
5f theoretical – theory
5g frequent – frequency
5h critical – criticism or critic
5i Social – society
5j practical – practice

6 approximation/particularity
superior/reasonable
strategy/synthesis
political/economic + economical
industry/culture
external/average

7a economic
approximation
particularity
external
synthesis
average
reasonable
culture

3.10 Nouns – Countable and Uncountable

4 Model answers
4a . . . of teaching is required
4b . . . travelling in the desert
4c . . . insufficient capital
4d . . . during a meal
4e . . . mainly political centres
4f . . . are moved around the world daily
4g . . . huge loss of life
4h . . . many great films
4i Her carelessness . . .
4j . . . a great leveller
4k . . . in those laboratories
4l . . . very demanding
5a Little
5b businesses
5c experience/is
5d travel broadens
5e Paper was
5f much advice
5g few interests
5h war
5i Irons were
5j behaviour
6a little
6b much
6c many
6d few
3.11 Nouns – Umbrella

1a cause
1b theory
1c event
1d feature
1e machine
1f area
1g organisation
1h views
1i consideration
1j process
1k types
1l problem
2a body
2b phenomenon
2c issues
2d field
2e device
2f concept
2g aspects
2h categories
2i concern
2j factor
2k perspectives

3.12 Prefixes and Suffixes

3

auto by itself
co together
ex (i) previous
(ii) outside
micro  small
multi  many
over  too much
post  later
re  again
sub  below
under  (i) below
(ii) not enough
4a  social class at bottom of society
4b  more tickets sold than seats available
4c  very local climate
4d  economy based on information not production
4e  not listed in the telephone book
4f  disappointed
8a  noun – something which is no longer offered
8b  adjective – two related events at the same time
8c  adverb – without cooperation
8d  adjective – related to evolution
8e  noun – person who protests
8f  adjective – not able to be forecast
8g  adjective – able to be sold
8h  noun – person being interviewed
8i  noun – style of ultra-realistic painting
8j  adverb – in a way that suggests a symbol
9a  joint production/junior company
9b  without choosing to/not hurt
9c  able to be refilled/certain
9d  cannot be provided/unusual
9e  existing in theory/breaking into pieces

3.13 Prepositions
1. purpose of/development of/in Britain/over the period/contributed to/valuable for/In conclusion/sets out/relationship between/decline in/supply of/in the factory

Verb + = contributed to
Adj. + = valuable for
Phrasal verb = sets out
Place = in Britain/factory
Time = over the period
Phrase = In conclusion

2b adjective +
2c verb +
2d place
2e noun +
2f phrase
2g place
2h time
3a of
3b in
3c of
3d for
3e of
3f on
4a On
4b of
4c of
4d In
4e of
4f On
4g In
4h of
5a Among
5b from/to
5c in/of
5d in/in
5e in/at
5f On/between
6a out
Answers

6b of
6c in/to
6d to
6e among/in
6f from
6g between
6h in
6i of
6j over
6k between
6l in
6m in
6n of
6o in/to

3.14 Punctuation

7a On Tuesday June 6, 1759, in the church at Derby, Nicolas James married Mary Dewey.
7b Professor Rowan’s new book, The Triumph of Capitalism, is published in New York.
7c How many people would agree with John Lennon when he said: ‘All You Need is Love’?
7d The probability was calculated for each of the three faculties: Physics, Biology and Law.
7e As Cammack (1994) points out: ‘Latin America is creating a new phenomenon: democracy without citizens.’
7f Thousands of new words such as ‘website’ enter the English language each year.
7g Dr Tanner’s latest study focuses on children’s reactions to stress in the playground.
7h She scored 56% on the main course; the previous semester she had achieved 67%.

8 The London School of Business is offering three new courses this year: Economics with Psychology; Introduction to Management; and e-commerce. The first is taught by Dr Jennifer Hillary and runs from October to January. The second, Introduction to Management, for MSc Finance students, is offered in the second semester, and is assessed by coursework only. Professor Wang’s course in e-commerce runs in both the autumn and the spring, and is for more experienced students.

3.15 Relative Pronouns

1a where
1b who
1c which/that
1d whose
2a which/that
2b where
2c who
2d which/that
2e who
2f which
4a D
4b D
4c A
4d A
4e D

5  (Sample answers)
5a The main campus, which used to be a golf course,
5b The River Nile, the longest in Africa,
5c Moscow, the ancient capital of Russia,
5d Nelson Mandela, who became president of South Africa,
5e Apples, a fruit associated with many legends,

6a necessary
6b not
6c not
6d necessary
6e not
7a whose
7b who
7c which/that
7d which/that
7e X
7f which
7g whose
7h which
3.16 **Singular/Plural**

1a disadvantages – e  
1b are – a  
1c areas – c  
1d crime – b  
1e town has its own council – d  
3a those problems  
3b varies  
3c cultures  
3d are  
3e a job/jobs  
3f A huge/Huge numbers  
3g has  
3h other places  
3i is  
3j lives  
4 companies have/websites/e-commerce/this is/businesses/their/trouble/security/expense/mean/these companies

3.17 **Time Words and Phrases**

3a Last  
3b During  
3c By  
3d for  
3e ago  
3f until  
3g Currently  
4a recently  
4b until  
4c for  
4d Last month
3.18 Verbs – Formality
2 (Possible synonyms)
  adapt = modify
  arise = occur
  carry out = conduct
  characterise = have features of
  clarify = explain
  concentrate on = look at closely
  concern with = deal with
  demonstrate = show
  determine = find
  discriminate = distinguish
  emphasise = highlight
  establish = lay down/found
  exhibit = show
focus on = look at closely
generate = create
hold = be true
identify = pick out
imply = suggest
indicate = show
interact = work together
interpret = explain
manifest = show
overcome = get over
predict = forecast
propose = suggest
prove = turn out
recognise = accept
relate to = link to
supplement = add to
undergo = experience
yield = produce

2a yielded
2b arose
2c demonstrate
2d held
2e emphasised
2f exhibited
2g concerned
2h carried out
3a demonstrate
3b clarify
3c recognised
3d discriminate
3e focus on
3f interpreted
3g overcome
3h predict

3.19 Verbs – Modal

(Others may be possible throughout this unit)

2a can
2b could
2c cannot
2d may/can
2e could
3a would
3b might/may/could
3c could/might/may
3d should/will/might
3e will
3f should/will
3g could not
4a should
4b must
4c must
4d should
5a would (conditional)
    should (suggestion)
5b may (possibility)
    could (ability)
5c will (prediction)
    would (conditional)
5d must (obligation)
    should (suggestion)
5e may (possibility)
    could (ability)
5f should (strong possibility)
    may (possibility)
3.20 Verbs – Passives

2a The data were collected and the two groups (were) compared.
2b 120 people in three social classes were interviewed.
2c The results were checked and several errors (were) found.
2d An analysis of the findings will be made.
3a The company was efficiently run by the Connors family until 1981.
3b The house was conveniently built near the station.
3c The portrait of the old man was brilliantly painted by Picasso.
3d Pencils for all the students in the exam were helpfully provided.
3e Over 550 people were regularly tested for the disease (by doctors).
3f The percentages were precisely calculated to three decimal places (by researchers).
3g Their business was optimistically called the Universal Trading Company.

4 (Passives)
was worn out
was born
was called
was helped
was taken over
was assisted

5 Not all – was born must be passive

Compare some sentences changed into the active, e.g. ‘On his death in 1860 his wife took over the business, and soon their 10-year-old son Jesse assisted her.’ This reads rather clumsily compared to the original.

6 (Suggested changes – others possible)
they were married – they married
the factories were used to make – the factories made
Boots was sold – he sold Boots
Boots was bought by a British group – a British group bought Boots
sugar was produced – the factories produced

3.21 Verbs and Prepositions

2a focused on/concentrated on
2b pointed out
2c specialising in
2d associated with
2e divided into
2f blamed for
2g believed in
2h rely on
4a derives from
4b consists of
4c added to
4d looked into
4e rely on/depend on
4f invested . . . in
4g Compared to
4h pay . . . for
4i rely on/depend on

3.22 Verbs of Reference
(Others may be possible)
3a A admitted/accepted/agreed that he might have made a mistake in his estimate.
3b B denied saying that sheep were faster than horses.
3c C stated that whales were very intelligent animals.
3d D agreed with A’s position on cats and dogs.
3e E assumed that cows could get cold in winter.
3f F concluded that pigs could not fly.
3g G discovered a new type of frog in the jungle.
3h H doubted that cats could learn to talk.
3i I suggested that cat and mouse behaviour should be compared.
3j J hypothesised that there might be a link between health and the seasons.
5a L criticised her for being careless about her research methods.
5b M classified bees into three main species.
5c N characterised the cat family as the kings of the animal world.
5d O interpreted dogs' barking as nervousness.
5e P described trying to estimate the number of animal species as being like shooting in the dark.
5f  Q commended/evaluated Darwin as the greatest naturalist of the nineteenth century.
5g  R defined insects as six-legged arthropods.
5h  S portrayed Queen Victoria as a short, rather fat, dark-eyed woman.
5i  T identified/presented Gregor Mendel as the founder of modern genetics.

### 3.23 Verbs – Tenses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Reason for use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a present simple</td>
<td>general rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b present continuous</td>
<td>current situation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c present perfect</td>
<td>recent event</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d present perfect continuous</td>
<td>recent, with emphasis on action that continues for a long time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e simple past</td>
<td>finished, with time phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f past continuous</td>
<td>finished, with emphasis on action that continues for a long time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g past perfect</td>
<td>refers to a previous past period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h future</td>
<td>prediction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2a has been rising/has risen
2b stands for
2c recorded
2d had written
2e will be
2f is considering
2g was building/had built
2h disputes/disputed
2i has fallen/has been falling
4a is/are working
4b believes
4c is looking for
4d is researching
4e has risen
4f owns
4g live
4h is attending
6a have suspected
6b have developed
6c confirmed
6d developed
6e was displayed
6f demonstrated
6g says/said
6h is being tested
6i makes
6j developed
6k will be available

Part 4 – Writing Models

4.1 Formal Letters

1a Address of sender
1b Address of recipient
1c Sender’s reference
1d Date
1e Greetings
1f Subject headline
1g Reason for writing
1h Further details
1i Request for response
1j Ending
1k Signature
1l Writer’s name and title
Dear Mr Bramble

Informal Interview

Thank you for inviting me to interview on May 21st. I will be able to attend on that date, but it would be much more convenient if I could have the interview at 12, due to the train times from Rowborough.

Could you please let me know if this alteration is possible?

Yours sincerely

P. Tan

P. Tan
3 Model answer

54 Sydney Road
Rowborough RB1 6FD
Tel: 0122-354-751

The Manager
Hotel Nelson
Queen’s Road
Rowborough RB2 4RN
Yr Ref: EN2
16 October 2006
Dear Sir

Vacancy for Reception Staff

I am writing in response to your advert for reception staff (Evening News 15/10).

I am currently studying at Rowborough University, but I am looking for part-time work, and believe that I have the qualities you are seeking. As you will see from my enclosed CV I have previous experience of working in a team, and speak Mandarin and Japanese as well as English. Having no family commitments I am quite prepared to work evenings or weekends.

I believe that I could make a useful contribution to your business, which I am considering as a future career, and hope to hear from you soon.

Yours faithfully
P. Tan
Enc. CV

4.3 Reporting and Designing Surveys

1 (Other suggestions possible/in any order)

Get up-to-date data
Collect information about the behaviour of a specific group, e.g. overseas students in London
Check/replicate other research

2a conducted
2b random
2c questionnaire
2d questioned
2e respondents
2f Interviewees
2g mentioned
2h majority
2i slightly
2j minority
2k questions
2l common
2m generally
2n sample

3 Model questions. (3–6 could use present tense)
Q2 Why did you take a job?
Q3 What effect did the work have on your studies?
Q4 What kind of work did you do?
Q5 What hours did you work?
Q6 How much did you earn?
Q7 Do you have any comments on your work?

4a past tense
4b present tense

The survey is completed but the results are still valid.

5 (ii) is less embarrassing for most people to answer.
6 (i) is an open question and has many possible answers.
   (ii) is a closed question with a limited range of responses.
7 For casual interviews ten is probably the maximum most interviewees will cope with.

4.5 Comparison Essay
(Other answers possible)
a It normally involves having access to a secure site on the internet where a graded series of lessons are available, and which have assignments sent and returned by email.
b A student living in a small town in China, for example, can now study a course at an American college.
c Membership of a group may also create a useful spirit of competition, which stimulates learning.
There may be many people who are unable, either through work or family commitments, or due to lack of funds, to go to classes . . .

Although on-line courses are now offered by many institutions . . .

. . . it is by no means clear that they offer real advantages compared to classroom education.

e-education/on-line courses/internet use in education/e-learning

4.6 Discussion Essay

1

1 F
2 C
3 A
4 G
5 E
6 B
7 D

2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Addition</th>
<th>Result</th>
<th>Reason</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Opposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>while and as well as also</td>
<td>so that therefore</td>
<td>since due to because of</td>
<td>first then</td>
<td>e.g. for example such as for instance</td>
<td>but yet however</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

WRITING TESTS

Writing Test 1

Note that in some cases, e.g. (1a), only one answer is acceptable; in other cases, e.g. (1b), a number of synonyms are possible, not all of which may be listed.

1a in
1b problem/difficulty/challenge/priority
1c the/so
1d difficult/problematic/challenging
1e However/Next/Then
1f or
1g improves
Writing Test 2

Speaking and Writing
1) When we speak, it is normally to one or
2) a small number of people, who are often well known to us.
3) As we speak, we are able
4) to study our listeners’ faces for expressions which tell
5) us their reaction to what we are saying;
6) for example agreement, or amusement.
7) If their expressions show incomprehension
8) we will probably restate what we are saying.
9) For most people speaking feels like a natural activity,
10) though if they have to make a formal speech
11) they often find the situation stressful.

1) Writing, however, is much more like speaking to
2) an unknown audience.
3) Unless we are writing a letter to a friend
4) we have no way of knowing who may read our words.
5) Writers cannot check if the readers understand, or are interested
6) in what they are writing.
7) This is the reason why writing is more difficult than
8) speaking, and often uses a more formal style.
9) It also explains why writing must be as clear and simple as possible,
10) to avoid the dangers of being misunderstood by readers
11) who cannot look puzzled to
12) make the writer explain what he means again.

Writing Test 3

Note comments in Writing Test 1 above.
3a somewhere
3b from
3c who
3d kinds/types sorts/categories
3e Almost/Nearly/Virtually
3f halls
3g make/find
3h convenient/practical/sensible
3i but/although/though
3j rather
3k a
3l This
3m may/might/can/could/should
3n also
3o on
3p as/since/because
3q be
3r vital/important/essential/critical
3s an
3t them
Writing Test 4

Model answer

A COMPARISON OF BORCHESTER AND ROWBOROUGH AS A STUDY LOCATION

Rowborough is a large industrial city with a population of one and a half million, while Borchester is an old city with a much smaller population. These basic differences determine their suitability as centres for a university course.

Rowborough can offer a wider range of leisure facilities but Borchester has a quieter character. Rowborough may have a worse climate, being cool even in summer and wet in winter, while winters in Borchester are less cold, though the summers tend to be wet.

Rowborough is hillier than Borchester, which might be a drawback for cyclists. However, Rowborough does have a better public transport system, which may compensate for the hills. Borchester also has a rather remote campus, which might involve a lot of travelling. It is also likely to be more expensive in terms of accommodation, and is rather distant from the capital. On the other hand, some areas in Rowborough suffer from high crime rates.

Clearly, each city has its advantages: Borchester is more likely to suit a student looking for peace and quiet, who can tolerate some inconvenience, while Rowborough would be suitable for someone keen to economise and wanting a more lively atmosphere.
Quotations from the following articles will be found in various units. As the quotations have been made to give examples of language, rather than for reasons of content, in-text references are not made.


Smith, L. and Haddad, L. 2001. How important is improving food availability for reducing child nutrition in developing countries? *Agricultural Economics* 26 (3) 191–204


eBooks – at www.eBookstore.tandf.co.uk

A library at your fingertips!

eBooks are electronic versions of printed books. You can store them on your PC/laptop or browse them online.

They have advantages for anyone needing rapid access to a wide variety of published, copyright information.

eBooks can help your research by enabling you to bookmark chapters, annotate text and use instant searches to find specific words or phrases. Several eBook files would fit on even a small laptop or PDA.

NEW: Save money by eSubscribing: cheap, online access to any eBook for as long as you need it.

Annual subscription packages

We now offer special low-cost bulk subscriptions to packages of eBooks in certain subject areas. These are available to libraries or to individuals.

For more information please contact
webmaster.ebooks@tandf.co.uk

We’re continually developing the eBook concept, so keep up to date by visiting the website.

www.eBookstore.tandf.co.uk